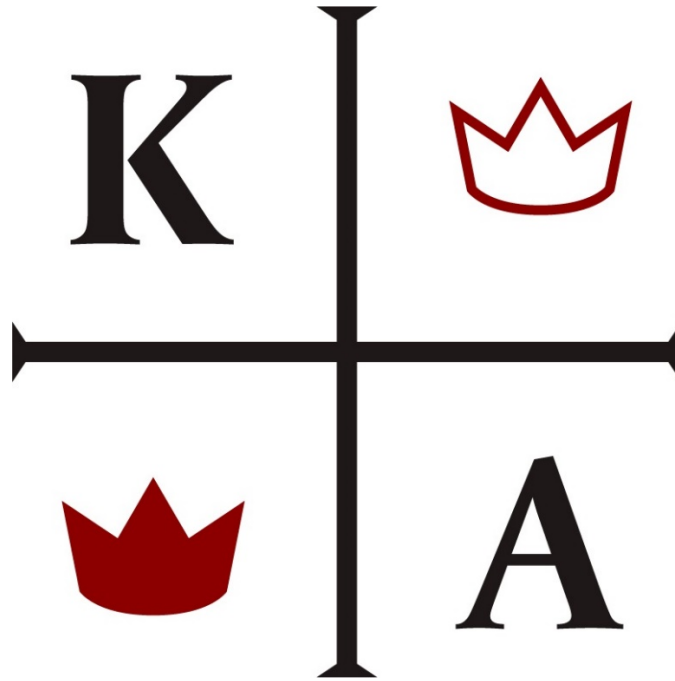


# Elementary Literature Study Guide

Teacher's Edition



©2016 Kolbe Academy

Kolbe Academy Home School  
1600 F St, Napa, CA 94559  
Tel: (707) 255-6499 Fax: (707) 255-1581  
[homeinfo@kolbe.org](mailto:homeinfo@kolbe.org) [www.kolbe.org](http://www.kolbe.org)

*Ad Majorem Dei Gloriam*



## Table of Contents

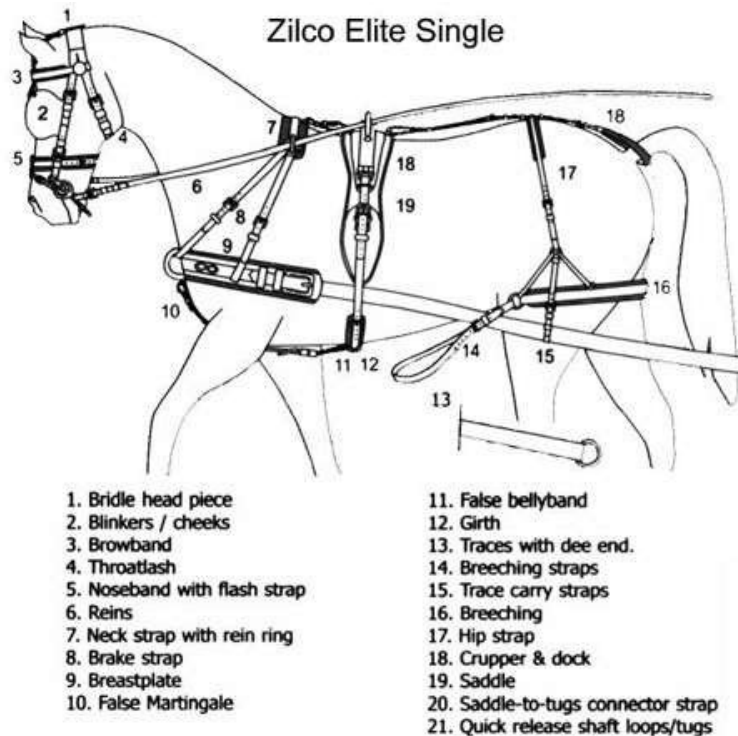
BLACK BEAUTY.....	1
THE BRONZE BOW.....	9
CAPTAIN'S COURAGEOUS.....	13
CARRY ON, MR. BOWDITCH.....	18
FAVORITE POEMS, OLD AND NEW.....	24
FINGAL'S QUEST.....	32
HEIDI.....	35
THE HOBBIT.....	41
I AM DAVID.....	48
ISLAND OF THE BLUE DOLPHINS.....	55
JOYFUL NOISE.....	62
KIDNAPPED.....	66
KON-TIKI.....	74
LINCOLN: A PHOTOBIOGRAPHY.....	78
THE MIRACLE WORKER.....	82
MRS. FRISBY AND THE RATS OF NIMH.....	85
MY SIDE OF THE MOUNTAIN.....	90
OLD YELLER.....	94
OUTLAWS OF RAVENHURST.....	97
REDWALL.....	105
THE SECRET GARDEN.....	119
A SINGLE SHARD.....	124
SWISS FAMILY ROBINSON.....	128
WHERE THE RED FERN GROWS.....	141
THE WHIPPING BOY.....	149
WHITE FANG.....	154
WITCH OF BLACKBIRD POND.....	160
A WRINKLE IN TIME.....	166
BLESSED MARIE OF NEW FRANCE.....	169
THE MIRACULOUS MEDAL.....	172
SAINT CATHERINE OF SIENA.....	175
SAINT DOMINIC.....	178

SAINT HYACINTH OF POLAND .....	182
SAINT JOHN BOSCO.....	186
SAINT JOHN MASIAS .....	190
SAINT MONICA .....	193
SAINT THOMAS AQUINAS .....	197
SAINT VINCENT DE PAUL .....	199

# Black Beauty

## CHAPTERS 1-11

VOCABULARY: See equipment for horses diagram below.



## CHAPTER 1

- 1) The *protagonist* is the main character with whom we should identify in the story. Who is the protagonist in this story?
  - a. *The protagonist is Black Beauty, the horse.*
- 2) Who is telling the story?
  - a. *Black Beauty, the horse is telling the story.*
- 3) How can he tell the story?
  - a. *The author uses the technique of personification.*
- 4) What was Black Beauty's early home like?
  - a. *Black Beauty's home is lovely, with a meadow, a loving mother, a pond, and set on a plantation.*
- 5) How did the people treat Black Beauty here?
  - a. *They treated him with kindness, love, and protection.*
- 6) *What happened when a boy was cruel to the horses?*
  - a. *He was chastised and sent away.*

## CHAPTER 2

- 1) What tragedy happened during the hunt?
  - a. *Two horses went down, and the Squire's son died.*
- 2) What happened to Rob Roy?
  - a. *He was shot because there was nothing that could be done for him.*

### CHAPTER 3

- 1) What does it mean to break in a horse?
  - a. *To train it so it can work for human beings.*
- 2) How was Black Beauty broken in?
  - a. *He was broken in gently by the master himself. He was turned out in a pasture near train tracks to get him used to machinery noises.*

### CHAPTER 4

- 1) Who bought Black Beauty?
  - a. *Squire Gordon*
- 2) What other horses lived with Black Beauty?
  - a. *Ginger and Merrylegs lived with Black Beauty.*
- 3) What was life like there?
  - a. *There was no better place.*

### CHAPTERS 5 & 6

- 1) Compare/Contrast Black Beauty's life now with his life when he was young.
  - a. *He used to be free to do whatever he liked, and now he has to work. He was content in both places.*

### CHAPTER 7

- 1) Why was Ginger so mean?
  - a. *She was taken early from her mother; boys flung stones at her; her masters were not kind; she was often shut up in a stall with no liberty; she was not gently broken; she was flogged; etc.*

### CHAPTER 8

- 1) What did cruelty to Ginger do for her?
  - a. *It made her bite and kick and have a nasty temper.*
- 2) What did kindness to Ginger do for her?
  - a. *Kindness brought her back to being gentle tempered.*
- 3) What were the Birtwick Horseballs?
  - a. *1 lb each of patience, kindness, firmness, and petting mixed with 1/2 lb of common sense to be given to the horse each day.*

### CHAPTER 9

- 1) What do you think about what Merrylegs did to the boys?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

### CHAPTER 10

- 1) What happened to Sir Oliver's tail?
  - a. *It had been docked.*
- 2) What did the horses think about ear and tail docking?
  - a. *They felt it was cruel.*
- 3) How do you feel about it?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*
- 4) How did the horses feel about blinkers?
  - a. *They felt that a lot of accidents could have been avoided had horses not been blinded by blinkers.*

## CHAPTER 11

- 1) What did the pony's driver think about the pony turning when they were going straight?
  - a. *He thought the horse was being disobedient.*
- 2) What did he do about it?
  - a. *He whipped the pony.*
- 3) What did Squire Gordon think about the pony turning when they were going straight?
  - a. *He thought it showed the pony's intelligence because they often turned there.*
- 4) What did Squire Gordon chastise Captain Langley about?
  - a. *His use of the bearing reins.*

## CHAPTER 12-22

**VOCABULARY:** venerable, hostler, heathenish, impudent

## CHAPTER 12

- 1) Why did Black Beauty stop on the way home?
  - a. *A tree fell across the path.*
- 2) Why was Black Beauty disobedient about going across the bridge?
  - a. *He knew it was out.*

## CHAPTER 13

- 1) What is the Devil's own trademark?
  - a. *Cruelty*
- 2) Why did the Farmer send his wife into the house when all she wanted to do was help her son?
  - a. *Her husband knew their son did not need pampering, but maybe a good beating instead.*
- 3) How would you handle it if your son was cruel to an animal?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

## CHAPTER 14

- 1) How did Squire Gordon get John to give his opinion about James?
  - a. *He acted like someone had spoken ill of James.*
- 2) What happened because of the conversation?
  - a. *James got an excellent position as a coachman.*

## CHAPTER 15

- 1) What could the old hostler tell you after being with your horse for twenty minutes?
  - a. *What sort of groom the horse has had.*

## CHAPTER 16

- 1) Why wouldn't the horses go with the second hostler when the barn was on fire?
  - a. *He was frightened and in a hurry, and the horses sensed that.*

## CHAPTER 17

- 1) Who came to replace James?
  - a. *Little Joe Green*
- 2) Why was John happy to take on a young, inexperienced apprentice?
  - a. *Someone had done the same for him and his crippled sister when he was 14.*

## CHAPTER 18

- 1) Why did John ride Beauty so hard in the middle of the night?
  - a. *Mrs. Gordon was very sick.*
- 2) Why couldn't Beauty rest at the doctor's?
  - a. *All the doctor's horses were gone.*
- 3) Why did Beauty get sick?
  - a. *Joe did not know how to care for him properly.*

## CHAPTER 19

- 1) Why was John upset about Tom using ignorance as an excuse for Beauty's improper care?
  - a. *Great harm can come from ignorance.*

## CHAPTER 20

- 1) Why did Joe race Beauty to Mr. Clay's house?
  - a. *Mr. Clay's bricklayer was flogging two horses cruelly.*

## CHAPTER 21

- 1) Why was the Gordon household broken up?
  - a. *The mistress was gravely ill and had to go away for two or three years.*

## CHAPTER 22

- 1) What did John warn York against using with the two horses?
  - a. *The bearing rein.*
- 2) Who insisted this device be used and why?
  - a. *The lady of the house because it was fashionable.*
- 3) How was it applied?
  - a. *As high as it would go.*
- 4) What did it do for the horses?
  - a. *Made pulling very difficult.*
- 5) How do you feel about that?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

## CHAPTER 23

- 1) Why was Ginger relieved of carriage duty?
  - a. *She fought because the bearing rein hurt her so much.*
- 2) What happened to Black Beauty?
  - a. *His leg was injured and because he was more complacent, he still had to draw the carriage.*
- 3) What did you learn about horses foaming at the mouth?
  - a. *It is unnatural for them to do it.*
- 4) Why did horse dealers train the horses with the bearing reins?
  - a. *When people's horses wear out or die faster, the dealers get customers more often and those customers want their horses already trained with the bearing rein.*
- 5) How do you feel about that?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*



## CHAPTER 24

- 1) What happened to Lady Anne?
  - a. *She rode a nervous horse side saddle; it was startled; it bolted and she fell off when it leaped over the dyke.*
- 2) What role did Black Beauty play?
  - a. *He got Blantyre's attention and raced to catch the runaway horse. Then he took another man to go get help.*
- 3) This book shows, through example, time and time again, how harmful ignorance can be. How can you combat ignorance?
  - a. *By learning as much as you can before you begin doing anything and by asking questions if you don't know the answers yourself.*

## CHAPTER 25

- 1) What was Reuben Smith's one great fault?
  - a. *Alcoholism*
- 2) Why was Smith's judgment impaired?
  - a. *He got drunk.*
- 3) Why wasn't Beauty's shoe repaired?
  - a. *Smith ordered it not to be.*
- 4) What happened to Beauty because it wasn't?
  - a. *Beauty lost his shoe, injured his foot, and fell.*
- 5) What happened to Smith?
  - a. *He was thrown from the horse.*
- 6) What can happen when a person abuses alcohol?
  - a. *They can lose control and do themselves and others great injury.*

## CHAPTER 26

- 1) What happened to Smith's wife and six children because of his death?
  - a. *They had to leave their home to go live in a poor house.*

## CHAPTER 27

- 1) Why did the earl have to sell Black Beauty?
  - a. *His knees were ugly.*
- 2) How was Ginger ruined?
  - a. *She was ridden too hard.*

## CHAPTER 28

- 1) What was it like to be a "job horse?"
  - a. *Drivers and riders mostly didn't know what they were doing and often hurt the horses.*
- 2) What happened to Black Beauty's foot this time?
  - a. *He picked up a sharp stone, but the driver did not even notice. A passerby helped him. The driver did not take the farmer's advice.*

## CHAPTER 29

- 1) Why should people walk sometimes when out riding or driving?
  - a. *So the horse can get over a steep hill or through mud, etc.*

- 2) What happened to Rory?
  - a. *He was badly injured in an accident where another driver took a turn too fast and on the wrong side of the road. Then he became a coal cart horse.*
- 3) Why did Peggy walk funny?
  - a. *She had short legs and men want to go fast.*
- 4) Who bought her?
  - a. *Two ladies who wanted a good, safe horse.*
- 5) How did blinkers hurt the nervous horse?
  - a. *He could never reassure himself, because he could not fully see what scared him.*

### CHAPTER 30

- 1) Why was Barry's friend concerned about Black Beauty?
  - a. *He saw he wasn't being fed properly.*
- 2) Why did Barry's groom have to go to jail?
  - a. *He was stealing Beauty's food.*

### CHAPTER 31

- 1) What was wrong with Barry's second groom?
  - a. *He was lazy and did not care for Beauty as he should have.*
- 2) What did Barry do because of the second dishonest groom?
  - a. *He gave up having a horse.*
- 3) Stealing, cruelty, and neglect are each sinful—why?
  - a. *They harm others, God has told us it is wrong, etc.*
- 4) When you are given responsibility to care for something, what should you do?
  - a. *Care for it to the best of your ability.*

### CHAPTER 32

- 1) What was the horse fair like?
  - a. *There was a great variety of horses. Some were in fine condition, and others were broken down & sickly.*
- 2) What kind of person bought Beauty?
  - a. *A cabbie bought Beauty.*
- 3) How did Beauty expect his life to go now?
  - a. *Well*

### CHAPTER 33

- 1) What were the names of the people in the cabbie's family?
  - a. *Jerry, Polly, Harry, and Dolly*
- 2) What was life like for Beauty now?
  - a. *Nice. He was treated well. He was kept clean and well fed and watered. He rested on Sunday.*

### CHAPTER 34

- 1) How were horses put on ships?
  - a. *They were swung onto the ship.*

### CHAPTER 35

- 1) Why wouldn't Jerry Barker ever be a rich man?

- a. *He would not hurry his horse and take extra money for people who were late because of their own laziness, and when someone had a justifiable reason for running late, he would not take extra for hurrying his horse.*

#### **CHAPTER 36**

- 1) Why did Jerry lose his best customers?
  - a. *He refused to work on Sunday.*

#### **CHAPTER 37**

- 1) Why did Jerry's best customers come back?
  - a. *He kept his cab the cleanest and they liked the pace he drove his horses.*
- 2) What fare did Jerry take one Sunday?
  - a. *Dinah, a new mother who wanted to see her own dying mother.*
- 3) What treat did Black Beauty get?
  - a. *A run in a field.*

#### **CHAPTER 38**

- 1) Why did Jerry call the man a gentleman?
  - a. *He saw to the comfort of Jerry and his daughter though he did not have much time to spare.*

#### **CHAPTER 39**

- 1) What were Seedy Sam's last words?
  - a. *"I never had a Sunday's rest."*

#### **CHAPTER 40**

- 1) Describe Ginger now after their years of separation.
  - a. *She was ill-kept. Her coat was ragged, and her bones showed through. Her legs were swollen, and she had no life in her.*
- 2) What was her wish?
  - a. *She wished she were dead*
- 3) Did she get her wish?
  - a. *Yes*

#### **CHAPTER 41**

- 1) What was the difference between the butcher's cart horse and the greens and potatoes horse?
  - a. *The butcher's horse had to hurry everywhere because of the orders. The other horse was not hurried about like that, and it followed its master like a dog.*

#### **CHAPTERS 42-49**

**VOCABULARY:** droll, dray, farrier, purblind, cordial, phaeton

#### **CHAPTER 42**

- 1) Why did Harry give some boys a thrashing?
  - a. *They insulted his sister.*
- 2) What did Jerry advocate in voting?
  - a. *He wanted every man to vote his conscience.*

#### CHAPTER 43

- 1) What did Jerry charge the woman for taking her and her crippled son to the hospital?
  - a. *He charged them nothing.*
- 2) What did he give up to do that?
  - a. *He gave up a full-paying fare.*

#### CHAPTER 44

- 1) What happened because the drayman was drunk?
  - a. *He had a terrible accident where a girl was run over, Jerry's cab was damaged, Jerry was thrown, and Old Captain was severely injured.*

#### CHAPTER 45

- 1) What happened with Jerry's New Year's Eve fare?
  - a. *They asked him to pick them up at 11:00 but did not get into the cab until 1:15*
- 2) Where did Jerry and Beauty have to wait?
  - a. *They had to wait in the cold rain.*
- 3) What happened because of that night?
  - a. *Jerry became very sick with bronchitis. They were worried that he might die. They ended up selling the horses and the cab so they could move to the country.*

#### CHAPTER 46

- 1) What made Black Beauty's life so difficult once he was owned by the corn dealer and baker?
  - a. *Extremely heavy loads, the bearing rein, the whip, and a poorly-lit stable.*
- 2) How did the lady make Black Beauty get the heavy load up the hill?
  - a. *She had the driver remove the bearing rein.*

#### CHAPTER 47

- 1) What happened to Black Beauty when he worked for the large cab company?
  - a. *He was constantly overworked and never had a day's rest. He finally fell down because he was overloaded.*

#### CHAPTER 48

- 1) What did the boy convince his grandfather to do?
  - a. *The boy convinced his grandfather to buy Black Beauty.*
- 2) What did Willie's care do for Black Beauty?
  - a. *Willie's care made him young again.*

#### CHAPTER 49

- 1) What were Black Beauty's final days like?
  - a. *Lovely. Little Joe Green had grown up and was his groom. He had light work with plenty to eat and drink and nice places to run about.*

# The Bronze Bow

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** tetrarch, synagogue, oleander, burgeoning

- 1) Who saved Daniel when he was cold and near starvation?
  - a. *Rosh*
- 2) To where were Joel and Malthrace moving?
  - a. *Capernaum*
- 3) In what two professions had Joel been trained?
  - a. *He had been trained to be a rabbi or a sandal maker.*
- 4) What made Daniel spit?
  - a. *He saw Roman legionaries.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** basalt What feelings does Daniel have for Joel?

- a. *Jealousy*
- 2) What feelings do the men have for the giant liberated slave?
  - a. *Fear*
- 3) What feelings does "Samson" have for Daniel?
  - a. *Gratitude*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** mezuzah, shema

- 1) Why did Daniel and Simon take a bath before they got to the village?
  - a. *They needed to bathe before the Sabbath began.*
- 2) What did Daniel do as he entered his grandmother's home?
  - a. *He touched the mezuzah.*
- 3) What had happened to Amalak?
  - a. *He died.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** Torah, Aramaic, auxiliaries

- 1) Why hasn't Leah left the house since she was five years old?
  - a. *She is possessed by demons.*
- 2) What did Simon bring and give to Daniel?
  - a. *A cloak and sandals.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** phylacteries, cohort, legion

- 1) What was Joel's house like?
  - a. *It was beautiful, gated, and expensive. The family had servants, and they strictly followed the Jewish Law.*
- 2) How much money did Rosh send with Daniel for his journey?
  - a. *None*
- 3) Why was Daniel forbidden from seeing Joel again?
  - a. *Daniel was a Zealot, and Joel's father wanted his son to have nothing to do with violence.*

- 4) How did Daniel know the man who met him at the door was a servant?
  - a. *The man had ear piercings.*
- 5) What was different about how the family ate?
  - a. *The women ate apart from the men behind a silk screen.*

## CHAPTER 6

### VOCABULARY: cubit

- 1) What caused Daniel to be in trouble with the soldier?
  - a. *Daniel threw a bowl of water at the soldier.*
- 2) What caused Daniel's injury?
  - a. *A spear*
- 3) What were the words Daniel heard that he had not heard in years?
  - a. *"Goodnight, Daniel."*

## CHAPTER 7

- 1) Why didn't Daniel's uncle have enough money to pay his taxes?
  - a. *He bought a special shawl for his wife. He had planned to earn some extra money to pay his taxes, but the tax collector came early.*
- 2) Why did the Romans crucify Daniel's father?
  - a. *He had tried to free Daniel's uncle.*
- 3) How did Daniel's mother die?
  - a. *She became sick from staying out with her husband as he died and from her grief.*
- 4) What happened to Daniel's sister?
  - a. *She became possessed with demons and could not leave the house.*
- 5) What mark would Daniel leave on the wall to let Joel know he was there?
  - a. *A bronze bow*
- 6) Why wouldn't they change Daniel's bandages the next day?
  - a. *It was the Sabbath, and they were not allowed.*

## CHAPTER 8

### VOCABULARY: talisman

- 1) Who carried Daniel up the mountain and cared for him?
  - a. *Samson*
- 2) What had happened to the little boy Joel and Daniel met on the way to Simon's house?
  - a. *He had been bitten by a camel and it would not heal.*
- 3) What did Jesus say that made Joel think he was not a real preacher?
  - a. *That it was not necessary for them to wash their hands before eating.*

## CHAPTER 9

- 1) When Daniel gave Rosh the gold and the dagger, what else did Rosh want?
  - a. *He wanted the second dagger.*
- 2) Is it morally right to steal to fund a good cause?
  - a. *No*

## CHAPTER 10

- 1) What did Rosh give Daniel when he had to go take care of his family?
  - a. *Nothing*

- 2) What brought his sister over to him?
  - a. *He quoted Psalms as his grandmother lay dying.*

#### CHAPTER 11

- 1) What was the hardest thing for Daniel to do as a blacksmith in the village?
  - a. *Wait on a Roman Soldier.*
- 2) Why didn't Daniel just go back to the mountain when that was what he wanted most to do?
  - a. *He felt obliged to care for his sister. He was afraid she would starve.*
- 3) How did Rosh help Daniel?
  - a. *He didn't help Daniel.*

#### CHAPTER 12

- 1) What is the password the boys use?
  - a. *"Bow"*

#### CHAPTER 13

- 1) To whom has Joel been listening?
  - a. *Jesus*
- 2) What color was the cloth Daniel bought?
  - a. *Blue*

#### CHAPTER 14

- 1) Why were the men starving?
  - a. *The shepherds had fought back when the men went to steal sheep, so they had not had any meat for a week.*
- 2) What did Samson bring?
  - a. *A sheep he had stolen.*
- 3) Why is Daniel troubled?
  - a. *He does not know where he belongs. He longs for the easy life, but loves his sister too much to leave her.*

#### CHAPTER 15

- 1) What story did Leah want to hear repeatedly?
  - a. *The story of Jesus raising Jairus' daughter back to life.*
- 2) What did Daniel make that he hid?
  - a. *A bronze bow and arrow brooch.*

#### CHAPTER 16

- 1) What did Daniel and Malthrace have to carry?
  - a. *Two Roman packs.*
- 2) Why didn't Malthrace want to see Jesus?
  - a. *She couldn't bear to have him see her in a lie—dressed as Joel.*

#### CHAPTER 17

- 1) What happened to the catapult?
  - a. *The boys took it apart and hid the pieces in the watchtower.*

- 2) Joel was on the career path of being a rabbi. He is now scouting for thieves. Why does Daniel have misgivings?
  - a. *He is realizing that they are in the wrong.*

#### CHAPTER 18

- 1) Who will unchain Joel?
  - a. *Daniel*
- 2) What will the others be doing?
  - a. *The others will throw rocks.*

#### CHAPTER 19

**VOCABULARY:** fissure, oblique

- 1) Who saved Joel and Daniel?
  - a. *Samson*
- 2) Which boy died?
  - a. *Nathan*

#### CHAPTER 20

- 1) What does Joel ask Daniel to do?
  - a. *Warn Jesus that he is irritating the scribes and elders.*
- 2) Where is Joel being sent?
  - a. *Joel is being sent to Jerusalem.*
- 3) What is Joel's father planning to do with Maltrance?
  - a. *He is going to arrange a marriage for her.*

#### CHAPTER 21

- 1) Why is Jesus so tired?
  - a. *Men from the synagogue had been questioning him.*

#### CHAPTER 22

- 1) Who gave Leah the fruit?
  - a. *Marcus, the Roman Legionary gave her the fruit.*
- 2) Why is Daniel so mad at Leah?
  - a. *He cannot give up his hatred of the Romans and his sister befriended one.*

#### CHAPTER 23

- 1) What does Simon say that Jesus says are our only chains?
  - a. *Fear and hatred*
- 2) Why is Simon still following Jesus?
  - a. *Jesus' love and pity for the poor, lost, ignored, and forgotten.*

#### CHAPTER 24

- 1) How does Daniel tell Simon that Leah is dying?
  - a. *He sends Joktan with a message on a piece of pottery.*
- 2) What happens to Leah?
  - a. *Jesus awakens her from death.*
- 3) What happens to Daniel?
  - a. *He lets go of his hatred.*



# Captain's Courageous

(\*VOCABULARY with an asterisk is more likely to appear on the final exam)

## CHAPTER 1

VOCABULARY: frieze, ulster, irresolution, flourish, stogie, perceived, dory, peculiar, ravenously, \*prostration, \*schooner, stanchion

- 1) Why was Harvey on his first ocean liner voyage?
  - a. *His parents were taking him to Europe to finish his education.*
- 2) How much did Harvey get each month for pocket money?
  - a. *\$200*
- 3) How did Harvey come to be on the fishing boat?
  - a. *He was seasick and a wave pulled him into the sea. Manuel pulled him out and brought him aboard.*
- 4) Why would the author say Harvey was unfortunate because he had never received a direct order?
  - a. *Children need discipline to learn how to be good, productive adults.*
- 5) Did the captain believe Harvey even had \$130 in his pocket?
  - a. *No*
- 6) Why wouldn't the captain take Harvey to New York?
  - a. *They were a thousand miles from there, and they would lose their entire fishing season. He also did not believe Harvey.*
- 7) How much money did the captain say he would give Harvey if he worked while he was on the boat from May to September?
  - a. *\$10 a month or \$35 for the entire time.*

## CHAPTER 2

VOCABULARY: scuppers, dunnage, \*offal, dexterity, \*sluice, grampus, \*expostulated

- 1) What caused Harvey to bleed and cry?
  - a. *He was mouthing off and got a punch on the nose from Mr. Troop.*
- 2) What did Harvey do that was out of character for him to do?
  - a. *He apologized to Mr. Troop.*
- 3) Had Harvey ever done any work before in his life?
  - a. *No*
- 4) What did they do to store the little fishing boats?
  - a. *They pulled them up using pulleys, cleaned them out, and stacked them one on top of the other.*
- 5) Why do you think it was important to count the fish?
  - a. *So each man could be paid for what he had caught.*
- 6) What did the men have to do to preserve the fish?
  - a. *They cut them open, gutted them, and salted them.*
- 7) Why did Dan keep hitting Harvey with a knotted rope?
  - a. *Harvey kept falling asleep when he was supposed to be on watch for the We're Here.*

### CHAPTER 3

VOCABULARY: \*fathom, inquisitive, liable, maul, gaff, gunwale, \*zealously, kelleg, windlass, profusely, bowsprit, hemp, jib, foresail, \*incessant, \*imperceptibly, peak-halyards, fore, aft, boom, foc'sle (forecastle), gurry-butts, booby, quarter-deck, crutch, foresail, leeward, cringle, resolute, obstinacy, abominably, ebb tide, jib boom, tallow, sounding, promiscuously, smother, head sail, bulwarks, freeboard, shag-fishing, tating, trawl, condescending

- 1) Why did the boys have to be silent around Mr. Troop while he was smoking his pipe?
  - a. *He was pondering the cod, so he would know where to fish for them.*
- 2) When the boys finished their chores what did they get to go do?
  - a. *Take out Dan's dory to fish.*
- 3) What kind of fish did Harvey catch, and about how much did it weigh?
  - a. *Halibut/100lbs*
- 4) Why was Penn out of his mind?
  - a. *His family had all drowned in the Johnstown flood when the dam burst.*
- 5) Why was fishing from the boat harder on the back than fishing from a dory?
  - a. *The dory rides closer to the surface of the water, which bears the weight up to the last minute whereas the fisherman must haul the fish higher out of the water when fishing over the side of the boat.*
- 6) Why did Harvey have to ring the bell?
  - a. *So the dory could find its way back to the boat in the fog and somewhat rough seas.*

### CHAPTER 4

VOCABULARY: hawse-hole, pawl-post, \*indolent, \*northeaster, dolorous, tarred and feathered, quintal, nigger, placidly, stump-foremast, guyed, stay-sail, frigate, oakum, sloven, trawler, \*gesticulated

- 1) What did Manuel typically do for the Blessed Virgin Mary's blessings?
  - a. *He offered her 2-3 candles at Church every time he came into port*
- 2) What did Long Jack do instead?
  - a. *He made a model of his fishing boat and had the priest put it up near the altar.*
- 3) Why did Mr. Troop get so angry when Harvey told the crew the only song he knew was "Skipper Ireson's Ride?"
  - a. *Mr. Troop's father knew the man in the song, and the song told lies about Ireson. He believed Ireson was unjustly treated.*
- 4) What was a Jonah?
  - a. *It was anything that spoiled the luck of a fishing trip*
- 5) What kind of man was Uncle Abishai?
  - a. *He was a tough, foul-mouthed, drunken sailor who cast spells for money and was always in debt.*
- 6) What happened to him and his ship?
  - a. *They sunk*
- 7) What did Mr. Troop do, and what was the result?
  - a. *He hurried his ship over to try to save anyone he could, but there was nothing and no one left.*
- 8) Why did Harvey say he did not notice the rough seas?
  - a. *He was too busy.*

## CHAPTER 5

VOCABULARY: affliction, caste, acquitting, germans, quadrant, The Old Farmer's Almanac, \*etiquette, gaff, gob-stick, impertinence, prat, \*amiable, interminable, specious, libellous, phosphates, barque, swedge, Freemason

- 1) What did Harvey use to locate the ship's position?
  - a. *He used the Old Farmer's Almanac.*
- 2) What did the crew of the *We're Here* do on Sundays?
  - a. *They did not work. They cleaned up, sang some hymns, and read from a book called "Josephus."*
- 3) What did the crew of the *We're Here* get for their chocolate and crackers?
  - a. *Tobacco*

## CHAPTER 6

VOCABULARY: \*condescend, impenitently, sounded

- 1) What chased the *We're Here* for three miles?
  - a. *A big cattle boat chased them.*
- 2) Where did the *Marilla* end up once?
  - a. *Ireland*
- 3) Where did the *Lucy Holmes* end up once?
  - a. *Liberia*
- 4) What did the men catch in the dead of night that caused them all to turn black?
  - a. *Squid*
- 5) Why did Mr. Troop order that they cut their cable?
  - a. *The Carrie Pitman was about to run into them.*

## CHAPTER 7

VOCABULARY: quintal, \*reminiscences

- 1) What revelation did Harvey have as he rang the bell in the thick fog?
  - a. *How immature, uncaring, and ignorant he had once been when he thought it would be great if a steamer ran over a fishing boat.*
- 2) What Happened to the *Jennie Cushman* and its crew?
  - a. *It was run down by a large steam liner and all but one man—the captain—was killed.*
- 3) What did Penn finally remember?
  - a. *That his entire family had been lost in the Johnstown flood.*
- 4) What did the *Carrie Pitman* bring to the *We're Here*?
  - a. *Jason Olley's son who was not dead after all.*
- 5) Why did the crew of the *We're Here* wait three hours to eat breakfast?
  - a. *So Penn would think that nothing was wrong—they did not want him to remember his losses for fear he might go completely insane and die.*

## CHAPTER 8

VOCABULARY: frieze, caplin, rodings, \*audacious, lazarette

- 1) What was it like when they came into port?
  - a. *There were 3 fleets—hundreds of fishing boats—and dories from all the bigger boats in the water. Everyone was high spirited and talkative in a lot of different languages and dialects.*
- 2) What caused the big commotion as they were coming to shore?

- a. *Tiny (7-10 inches) silver fish (capelin) followed by cod followed by whales and all the men fishing because of it.*
- 3) What did the men in the dories do to entertain themselves when the fishing abated?
  - a. *They sang out the "sins" and embarrassing things about everything known on every man they knew of.*
- 4) What was the "greatest thing to be seen on the Bank"?
  - a. *A huge swell that flung up "acres" of water near a hidden rock.*
- 5) What happened to make the boys think a dead man had come back for them?
  - a. *Dan had bought the dead man's knife at the auction after his funeral. He gave it to Harvey. While they were fishing, Harvey's line hooked on the man's body, and superstition got the better of them.*
- 6) What did the boys do with the fish they caught?
  - a. *They threw them back to the sea.*
- 7) Who was the We're Here racing against?
  - a. *The Parry Norman*
- 8) Describe Disko's "triumphant procession."
  - a. *He went from boat to boat asking for any mail he could bring in for any of the crew to show off that he was ready to go in first.*
- 9) Why did Harvey cry?
  - a. *He missed his family when he saw Dan with his mother.*

## CHAPTER 9

VOCABULARY: \*impudently, indispensable, imbeciles, \*irreverent

- 1) How had Harvey's mother taken the loss of Harvey?
  - a. *She was completely beside herself, going out of her mind.*
- 2) Why did "hard men who had their knives drawn to fight for their financial lives put away the weapons and wished [Mr. Harvey] Godspeed?"
  - a. *He let them all know he was going to get his son whom he had given up for dead.*
- 3) What did Harvey do that surprised his father?
  - a. *He told him he was going back to finish his work.*
- 4) How much money did Manuel accept from the multi-millionaire's wife for saving her only son from the certain death of the sea?
  - a. *\$5*
- 5) What did he ask of her instead?
  - a. *To donate money to the semi-destitute widows.*
- 6) What did Mr. Cheyne do for Mr. Troop?
  - a. *He offered his son a fine position on one of his tea ships and planned for him to be able to travel back home on Mr. Cheyne's expense whenever his parents needed him.*

## CHAPTER 10

VOCABULARY: aquiline, \*cajoled, promiscuous, diligence, sobriety, palaver, perspired, \*reiterate, cadence, propitiate

- 1) Mr. Cheyne and Harvey have come to realize together how Harvey had not amounted to much because of how badly he had been spoiled, especially by Mrs. Cheyne. What does Harvey want to do with the rest of his childhood?
  - a. *He wants to not be pampered.*

- 2) Was Mr. Cheyne's road to riches an easy one? Why or why not?
  - a. *No. He worked many different jobs and had to learn everything as he went along. He also lacked a familial support network.*
- 3) What did he want for Harvey?
  - a. *He wanted him to have an education.*
- 4) What was the Memorial Day like?
  - a. *They read the names of the dead and the lost and took up collections for the widows and orphans.*
- 5) Who became Harvey's personal servant?
  - a. *The cook from the We're Here.*

# Carry on, Mr. Bowditch

## CHAPTERS 1-6

**VOCABULARY:** shilling, nor'easter, expectation, trade, fife, quill, slate, blubber, chandlery, indenture, becalmed, stern, starboard, bulkhead, taffrail

### CHAPTER 1

- 1) Who is the main character of the story?
  - a. *Nathaniel Bowditch*
- 2) What is the "good luck" spell Nat wants to do?
  - a. *Jingle silver in your pocket when you see a new moon.*
- 3) Father always said boys have to do what?
  - a. *Boys took care of girls and women*

### CHAPTER 2

- 1) What is an expectation?
  - a. *An expectation is the money a sailor expects to make on a voyage of a privateer.*
- 2) What does Nat do with his shilling?
  - a. *Nat buys an expectation from Tom Perry.*

### CHAPTER 3

- 1) What two things happen on April 19, 1775? Which is more important?
  - a. *Father's ship the Poly went aground and the Battle of Lexington took place. The battle of Lexington is the most important.*
- 2) Nat is small for his age. How does that affect him when he starts school?
  - a. *The teacher thinks he is younger than he is and won't give him hard problems to work.*
- 3) How does Nat prove to Mr. Watson that he can do big math problems?
  - a. *He is given a hard problem to solve and the teacher watches him the whole time as he solves the problem.*
- 4) What is Nat going to do with all the money he will earn from the auction of the Mars cargo?
  - a. *He wants to buy a new ship for his father, presents for the family and save the rest so he can go to Harvard.*
- 5) What happened to Tom Perry?
  - a. *He died a hero by taking a gunshot in the chest protecting the first mate.*

### CHAPTER 4

- 1) On to what kind of ship did Hab sign?
  - a. *Hab signed onto a letter of marque ship.*
- 2) What advice does Hab give Nat? How does it help Nat?
  - a. *Hab says "Boys don't blubber, if something hurts you say it doesn't." In the winter he'd outgrown his coat and needed the advice because of teasing from other children.*
- 3) Nat's family had many hardships during and after the war. What were they?
  - a. *Prices were climbing, money was worth less, couldn't buy winter coats, had to move to a smaller house.*
- 4) How long did Nat work in his father's cooperage?
  - a. *He worked in the cooperage for two years.*
- 5) Mother looks at the stars for what reason?
  - a. *Looking at the stars helps to shrink your troubles down to size.*

## CHAPTER 5

- 1) How does Nat meet Dr. Bentley?
  - a. *Nat bumps into him and falls in the mud.*
- 2) What happens just before Christmas?
  - a. *Mother dies just before Christmas.*
- 3) What happens when Nat is 12 years old?
  - a. *Nat is indentured to Ropes and Hodges.*
- 4) What is to be his trade?
  - a. *He will become the bookkeeper for the ship chandlery.*

## CHAPTER 6

- 1) How does Mr. Walsh feel about Nat's learning?
  - a. *Mr. Walsh says he is learning quickly.*
- 2) Describe Mr. Hodges in appearance and character.
  - a. *He is tall, sandy-haired, long face and looked stern until he smiled. He was friendly to Nat and wanted to be helpful, and generous by buying clothes for Nat.*
- 3) Sam Smith says "Bah, only a weakling gives up!" About whom is he talking?
  - a. *He was talking about Ben Meeker.*
- 4) How does Nat take that advice?
  - a. *Nat is strong in character and doesn't give up on things.*

## CHAPTERS 7-12

**VOCABULARY:** caulking, cargo, cyclopaedia, almanac, doldrums, yardarm, sampler, colors, apothecary, patent, sextants, spyglasses, despotic, venture, yellow fever

## CHAPTER 7

- 1) What kind of book did Nat discover at Mr. Ropes house?
  - a. *He discovered the "cyclopaedia."*
- 2) What subjects did Nat write about in his notebooks?
  - a. *He wrote about rope, sails, chandlery, navigation, surveying, algebra and mathematics.*

## CHAPTER 8

- 1) Dr. Bentley says that Latin is the language of what?
  - a. *Latin is the language of scholars and scientists.*
- 2) With what kind of books does Nat begin to learn Latin?
  - a. *He uses a Bible, a grammar and a dictionary.*

## CHAPTER 9

- 1) How does Nat show his cleverness when talking to Mary about David?
  - a. *He teases her about David finding another girl to marry.*
- 2) What does Nat do that is the exception to the rule?
  - a. *He is able to use the books in the Salem philosophical Library even though he is not a member.*
- 3) What does Elizabeth give Nat? Why?
  - a. *She gives him a book in Latin, because she knows it will help him learn*

## CHAPTER 10

- 1) What kind of man is Mr. Read?

- a. *He is an apothecary, a Harvard graduate, an inventor and generous with his books.*
- 2) Twice Elizabeth has made a comment on Nat's brain. What is it?
  - a. *"Your brain. It's too fast. So you stumble on others people's dumbness"*
- 3) What saying does Nat use to explain how he calmed Elizabeth after her father's death?
  - a. *He uses his mother's saying. Sometimes looking at the stars shrinks your troubles down to size.*
- 4) What does Minna mean when she said her brother "felt real lost-like" when he was free from his indenture?
  - a. *He had no money and didn't know what to do now that he was free to do whatever he wanted.*
- 5) What do you think Nat will do when he is free?
  - a. *After hiring a fife and drum.....Answers will vary.*

## CHAPTER 11

- 1) Why does Nat not want to hear what is said in the newspaper about the President?
  - a. *He felt articles that were against the President should not be printed.*
- 2) What is the trouble between England and America?
  - a. *England thinks they rule the seas and America wants to be able to sail and trade too.*
- 3) What is the turning point in Nat's life?
  - a. *He gets asked to sail on the Henry.*
- 4) To whom does Nat ask advice for his venture?
  - a. *He talks to Monsieur Bonnefoy who knows what might be good to trade.*

## CHAPTER 12

- 1) How does Mr. Derby feel about slave ships?
  - a. *He'd rather lose any ship he owns than to have one become a slaver.*
- 2) Compare surveying on land to navigation on sea.
  - a. *In navigation you have a known departure point and use a compass to steer a course. Surveying the earth is firm beneath your telescope, you can check and re-check. On a boat you are always moving. On land one can measure distances, at sea you measure speed and time.*
- 3) How does Nat react to his first days at sea?
  - a. *He is surprised at how much he doesn't know and he is lonely with the manner in which the other crew members treat him.*
- 4) Why does Nat teach the men?
  - a. *He wants to pay a debt he owes to the men who helped him out with his learning.*
- 5) What does "Carry on, Mr. Bowditch" mean?
  - a. *It means to keep doing what he is doing because it is the right thing to do.*

## CHAPTERS 13-17

**VOCABULARY:** lighter, lunar, occult (a star), lubber; brig, phosphorescence, athwart, corn husking, chronometer, supercargo, convoy

## CHAPTER 13

- 1) What did Nat find in Moore's Navigator, the "best book of its kind"?
  - a. *He found many errors in the tables!*
- 2) What does Nat say about mathematics and accuracy?



- a. *Mathematics is nothing if it isn't accurate! Men's lives depend on the accuracy of the tables.*
- 3) Nat made a discovery about "lunars". What was it?
  - a. *Instead of occulting a star, you could get the position of the moon in relation to three stars.*

#### CHAPTER 14

- 1) What does Mary tell Nat when he visits after learning about David's death?
  - a. *If it hadn't been for him she would not have married David and would not have been the happiest woman in Salem.*
- 2) What happens to the crew because of Nat's teaching?
  - a. *Captains are losing their crew, because they can sign on as second mates since they now know navigation.*
- 3) How does Nat feel about Elizabeth?
  - a. *He realizes that he likes her.*
- 4) How does Nat show his mathematical ability while visiting the Pintards?
  - a. *He figures out a big math problem in his head during a dinner party, in two minutes!*

#### CHAPTER 15

- 1) What problem does Captain Prince have with Lem Harvey?
  - a. *He says Lem was born to fight and was always getting into trouble.*
- 2) What does Nat propose to the crew "from here to Manila"?
  - a. *He asks if they would all like to learn navigation.*
- 3) What does Nat discover about a man when he finds out he has a brain?
  - a. *It does things to a man when he finds out he has a brain. The crews were attentive and there was always fewer problems on board ship when they were learning.*
- 4) What helps Lem learn, with Nat's encouragement?
  - a. *Lem finally learns when he stops being angry at himself for not understanding right away.*

#### CHAPTER 16

- 1) How does mathematics play a role in this chapter?
  - a. *This chapter is all about how mathematics helped Nat, the crew, navigation, sailing faster and smarter.*
- 2) Where are Nat's thoughts more and more?
  - a. *His thoughts are constantly on Elizabeth.*
- 3) How is he disappointed?
  - a. *Elizabeth's friend says she talks about him (Nat) like he was her big brother or her father! It makes him feel foolish for thinking about Elizabeth as something more than a sister.*

#### CHAPTER 17

- 1) Describe the corn husking game?
  - a. *When husking corn, if someone gets a red ear they have to kiss the person they like 13 times.*
- 2) What happened in March?
  - a. *Nat marries Elizabeth.*
- 3) What does Prince say about peace?
  - a. *The best way to stay at peace is to be prepared for war.*

- 4) How does an education change Lem Harvey?
  - a. *He is able to sign on as a second mate on a ship.*
- 5) Why does Elizabeth's comment about being "happier than any other girl ever was in the world" make Nat's spine tingle?
  - a. *That is what Mary said about her husband David and he died at sea.*

#### CHAPTER 18

- 1) Nat proposed to do what on the voyage aboard the *Astrea*?
  - a. *He intends to check every figure in every table in the navigational books.*
- 2) What does Count Mallevant call Nat? How does that make him feel?
  - a. *The Count calls him a great scholar of astronomy who has discovered a new way to work lunars. It makes him feel very happy.*
- 3) What news did Captain Gorman bring?
  - a. *He brought the news that Elizabeth had died.*

#### CHAPTER 19

- 1) How was Nat's homecoming after hearing the news about Elizabeth?
  - a. *He was very scared and sad about coming home. He was afraid to face his mother-in-law, but she welcomed him warmly.*
- 2) Who helps Nat after he arrives home?
  - a. *Polly is there to think for Nat and to help him in any way she can.*
- 3) Nat has a character flaw. What does his brother Hab say about him?
  - a. *Nat has a strong temper. He says "the little runt has a temper. Only about things that matter.*
- 4) Captain Prince is crafty – what does he do with the *Astrea* crew in Boston?
  - a. *He pays them their first month's wages and then anchors far enough from shore that they couldn't jump ship with the money and not go on the voyage.*

#### CHAPTER 20

- 1) What does Lupe want from Nat?
  - a. *He wants to trade the "know-how". Nat will teach him navigation and Lupe will teach Nat how to throw a knife.*
- 2) What does Nat say he will do because of all the errors in Moore's book?
  - a. *He is going to write a book of his own.*
- 3) Captain Hudson can't believe that all the crew of the *Astrea* can do what?
  - a. *He can't believe that they all can work a lunar.*

#### CHAPTER 21

- 1) Explain how Polly helps Nat write his book?
  - a. *She encourages him and is a good listener for all his ideas.*
- 2) How does Nat feel about Polly?
  - a. *He loves her being around, and he tells her he loves her.*
- 3) What is a "sealer"?
  - a. *A sealer is a ship that hunts seals.*
- 4) What news does Zack Selby bring to Nat?
  - a. *He brought the news that the sealer "John" went down, sank.*

#### CHAPTER 22

- 1) What is Polly's reaction to Nat being both Captain and supercargo?

- a. *She is proud of him and tells him he'll be a very busy man.*
- 2) What does Nat do on impulse? What happens there?
  - a. *On impulse he goes to the Harvard Commencement exercises and thinks he hears something like his name. It turns out he did and is told the school awarded him a degree in mathematics.*

#### **CHAPTER 23**

- 1) What realization does Nat come to about Captain Prince's demeanor when on board ship?
  - a. *Nat understood he was responsible for all the men on board ship and that was why Captain Prince was always stern and alert on voyages.*
- 2) Was pepper available in Sumatra?
  - a. *Pepper was not readily available in Sumatra, not for weeks.*
- 3) What does Nat do to fill the cargo holds?
  - a. *He waits out the Sumatra dato and gets a good price for the best pepper, then tops it off with coffee.*
- 4) What happens on the voyage home?
  - a. *There is storm after storm and it takes much longer to get home.*

#### **CHAPTER 24**

- 1) Describe what it is like to sail in a fog?
  - a. *Sailing in the fog is sailing blind, nothing can be seen*
- 2) Is Nat happy to be home?
  - a. *That was Nat's last voyage and he was very happy to be home with Polly and to prove that "sailing by the book" can work. It was a long time that he sailed by the ash breeze.*

## Favorite Poems, Old and New

### FROM "MYSELF AND I"

#### "ME"

VOCABULARY: forlorn

- 1) What poetic device is being used when the speaker compares themselves to the different flowers and trees?
  - a. *Simile*
- 2) What are the different trees mentioned in the poem?
  - a. *Willow, elder, aspen, thorn, cypress*
- 3) What are the different flowers mentioned in the poem?
  - a. *Primrose, pink, violet*
- 4) Why does the speaker compare themselves to the trees and the flowers if they want to be "just me"? How is the speaker similar to the trees and the flowers listed?
  - a. *While the willow is a tree, it is an individual because it is different from the aspen. Even though the speaker is a person, they are an individual too.*

### "HALFWAY DOWN"

- 1) The speaker in this poem has found a place that is special to them, but seems very ordinary to anyone else. Have you had before or do you have now a place where you like to go like this? Describe the place and why you like it.
  - a. *Answers will vary.*
- 2) Why does the speaker like the location of this place so much?
  - a. *Since it isn't really anywhere, it's somewhere else. They like that it's in the middle of everything.*
- 3) Why did the author put the word "Stop" on its own line at the end of the first stanza?
  - a. *The author did this because they wanted us to come to a stop in the middle of the poem like the speaker comes to a stop on the middle stair.*

### "THE INVISIBLE PLAYMATE"

VOCABULARY: rude, queer

- 1) What is the name of the speaker's imaginary friend?
  - a. *Fanny.*
- 2) Describe what Fanny looks like.
  - a. *She has yellow curly hair and a blue dress.*
- 3) The speaker says, "And she always plays quite fair / everything I tell her to." What might this tell us about one of the things the speaker likes about Fanny and how might this be different with her real-life relationships?
  - a. *Fanny does whatever the speaker wants. Maybe the speaker doesn't like that other children don't have to listen to her all of the time.*
- 4) Use a pencil and mark the words that rhyme together at the end of each line for the first stanza (for example, if the first line ended in "cat", the second line ended with "bat", and the third line ended with "sea", then "cat" would have an "A" next to it, "bat" would have an "A" next to it, and "sea" would have a "B" next to it). What pattern do we see for the rhyme?
  - a. *ABAB*

### “WISHING”

**VOCABULARY:** stooping, bough, creep, lofty, ruffle, dell, rove

- 1) In order, what are the three things the speaker wants to turn into?
  - a. *A primrose, an elm tree, and a robin.*
- 2) After reading the first stanza about the primrose, what seems to cause the speaker to want to be an elm tree?
  - a. *At the end of the first stanza, the speaker talks of how the elm tree is the king. This makes the speaker want to be a tree.*
- 3) After reading the second stanza about the elm tree, what seems to cause the speaker to want to be a robin?
  - a. *At the end of the second stanza, the speaker talks of the sweet songs of the birds in the boughs of the tree. This makes the speaker want to sing like a robin.*
- 4) After reading the third stanza about the robin, the fourth stanza has a very different tone. Instead of wanting to be something else, where does the speaker want to go and why?
  - a. *The speaker wants to go home because their mother’s kiss is sweeter than anything.*

### “A LITTLE SONG OF LIFE”

- 1) According to the first stanza, what are the things the speaker is thankful for?
  - a. *That they live, that the sky is blue, the country lanes, and dew falling.*
- 2) What does the speaker mean when they say, “be we low or high” in the last stanza?
  - a. *This could be referring to a couple of things: it might have to do with a person’s financial status in life, but it could also be referring to whether someone is “good” or not.*
- 3) In the last two lines, “is to see that we grow / nearer the sky”, to what is the speaker referring? What is the sky and why should we grow nearer to it?
  - a. *The sky is referring to heaven and the speaker means that everything we do should be with the intention of getting us to heaven.*

### “PRIMER LESSON”

**VOCABULARY:** proud

- 1) Personification is when human qualities are given to non-human things. What example of personification do we see in this poem?
  - a. *The “proud words” are given human characteristics when they wear long boots, they walk, and they can’t hear.*
- 2) Why is the author cautioning us against using “proud words”?
  - a. *These words can hurt us and others.*
- 3) Why does the author repeat the first line of the poem again in the last line?
  - a. *The author wants us to understand the importance of the message he is giving us, so he repeats it so we hear it twice.*

## **"A CHILD'S THOUGHT OF GOD"**

**VOCABULARY:** fold

- 1) What is an example of a simile you see in the third stanza? Whom or what is being compared?
  - a. *The simile involves the fold across God's face and the secret of untold love.*
- 2) According to the speaker, even though they don't see God, how do they feel His love?
  - a. *They think that his embrace goes down and out through all of God's creation.*
- 3) In the last stanza there is another simile. Whom or what is being compared here?
  - a. *The speaker is comparing the love from their mother, shown through a kiss in the dark, to the love of God flowing through all of his creation.*

## **"MY GIFT"**

- 1) What would the speaker give God if they were a shepherd?
  - a. *A lamb.*
- 2) What would the speaker do for God if they were a wise man?
  - a. *They would do their part.*
- 3) What does the speaker realize that God wants most from us?
  - a. *Our love.*
- 4) What is the rhyming pattern (rhyme scheme) for this poem?
  - a. *ABCB*
- 5) How do the speaker's feelings change over the course of the poem?
  - a. *At first, the speaker is sad and a little desperate with trying to figure out what they could possibly give God when they are so poor. Then, at the end of the poem, they seem to be at peace with the idea of giving God their love.*

## **FROM "MY FAMILY AND I"**

### **"SONG FOR A LITTLE HOUSE"**

**VOCABULARY:** hovering, vain, gossip, cast, shimmer, phlox, courteous, calls

- 1) When the speaker says, "I'm glad the hovering butterflies / Feel free to come inside," what are they describing about their house?
  - a. *They are describing the way it is welcoming and how many people and things seem to want to come in and be there.*
- 2) What example of personification do you see in the second stanza?
  - a. *The speaker gives the house human qualities in talking about how it gossips with the trees (who are also examples of personification) and makes friends with the rain (which is also an example of personification).*
- 3) By giving the house feelings and attitudes, how does that affect the way you picture the house? Does it help you or hurt you in seeing the house in your mind?
  - a. *Answers here will vary, but hopefully they say that it makes the house more clear or alive to them.*
- 4) What seems to be the speaker's attitude toward their house? How do they feel about it?
  - a. *It seems as though they love all aspects of their house.*

## **"WE THANK THEE"**

**VOCABULARY:** lest, astray, fragrant

- 1) Name at least five things the speaker wants to thank God for.
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

- 2) How does the speaker seem to feel toward God during this poem?
  - a. *The speaker is grateful to God.*
- 3) What is the refrain we see in this poem?
  - a. *"Father in Heaven, we thank Thee."*
- 4) Do you think the speaker has compiled a good list? Is there anything else you would add?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

### "HER WORDS"

**VOCABULARY:** sleek, mirth, loveliness, exquisite

- 1) We don't actually get to meet the mother of the speaker, but we do see the speaker's reaction to her and their description of her. Based off of the poet's description, what kind of person do you think their mother is?
  - a. *Answers will vary, but the student should include something about the mother being beautiful, faithful, gentle, kind, etc.*
- 2) What simile can we see in the first stanza? Copy the line or lines containing the simile and describe what is being compared.
  - a. *"Her talk comes out as smooth and sleek / as breasts of singing birds." The way the mother talks is being compared to the smooth feathers on the breast of a bird.*
- 3) What is the metaphor we see in the seventh stanza? Copy the line or lines containing the metaphor and describe what is being compared.
  - a. *"They are the hands of living faith / That touch the garment's hem." The hands of God and his creation are being compared to the hands of someone creating a beautiful garment and the garment itself.*
- 4) The last lines of the poem are: "And I am rich who learned from her / How beautiful they are." What is the speaker grateful to their mother for?
  - a. *The speaker is grateful that their mother is the one who taught them about God and their faith.*

### "FATHER"

**VOCABULARY:** timber, weather, veer, keen

- 1) What simile do we read in the first stanza? Copy the line or lines containing the simile and describe what is being compared.
  - a. *"His hands are gentle with beast or child / And strong as hardwood timber". The strength of the father's hands is being compared to that harness of wood.*
- 2) What kind of attitude does the speaker have towards the father?
  - a. *The speaker seems to admire the father for all of the things he knows and is able to do.*
- 3) How does the weather vane seem to affect the father?
  - a. *It affects how he is able to take care of the family through the management of the farm. He knows what to do when, based off of the weather.*

### "SISTERS"

- 1) What kind of relationship do the two sisters seem to have?
  - a. *It seems as though they have a good relationship, but it feels like Helen is "bugging" Ann a little bit.*
- 2) Which of the sisters is older and which is younger?
  - a. *Ann is older and Helen is younger.*

- 3) What is the “something’s happening”, according to Helen?
  - a. *Spring is beginning.*
- 4) What clues does the author give us that this is what’s happening?
  - a. *The author mentions how the lilac buds are starting and the birds are starting to chirp.*

#### “THE QUARREL”

**VOCABULARY:** quarrel, slight

- 1) Mark the rhyme scheme for this poem. What is it?
  - a. *ABAB*
- 2) How does the speaker’s attitude toward their brother change from the beginning of the poem to the end of the poem?
  - a. *In the beginning, the speaker is very upset with their brother. By the end of the poem, all is forgiven.*
- 3) At the end of the poem when the speaker says, “So he was in the right,” how is the brother in the right?
  - a. *The brother is in the right because he is the one to put his pride aside and apologize first.*
- 4) Can you relate to being one of these characters (either the speaker or the brother)? If so, how? If not, why not?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

#### “THE CHILDREN’S HOUR”

**VOCABULARY:** occupations, patter, descending, plotting, raid, turret, devour, entwine, banditti, scale, fortress, ruin, molder

- 1) What time of day does the Children’s Hour occur?
  - a. *In the morning just before sunrise.*
- 2) What is the father’s attitude toward his children and their surprise?
  - a. *Instead of being annoyed or afraid, he is amused and a little excited about their plot.*
- 3) There is an **extended metaphor** in this poem. What is it? What is being compared?
  - a. *The father compares himself and his room to a castle and his children to his attackers.*
- 4) In the second-to-last stanza, the speaker says, “I have you fast in my fortress, / and will not let you depart, / But put you down in my dungeon, / In the round-tower of my heart.” What does the speaker mean by this?
  - a. *The speaker means that he loves his children very much and he is going to keep them in his heart forever.*
- 5) Why do you think the children are so excited to surprise their father? Have you ever felt the same way? If so, what happened?
  - a. *The children are excited to see their father because they love him so much. The rest of the answer will vary among students.*

#### “PRAYER FOR THIS HOUSE”

**VOCABULARY:** pry, rafters, withstand, battering, hearth, shrine, raucous

- 1) What are two examples of personification we see in this poem?
  - a. *Answers may include: “nothing evil cross this door”, “Ill-fortune never pry”, and “Peace shall walk softly through these rooms”.*



- 2) If we think about the image of the house in this poem, describe how the inside of the house is different than the outside world.
  - a. *The inside house is safe, warm, and full of love and laughter. The outside world is full of evil and hate trying to get in.*
- 3) The outside world, in many ways, seems violent in this poem.
  - a. *What are some of the words the speaker uses to give us this impression? Answers may include: evil, pry, roar, rain, battering of the storm, chill, raucous shout, and hate.*
- 4) In what ways is your house like the one described in the poem?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

**FROM "FROM ALL THE WORLD TO ME"  
"WE WHO WERE BORN"**

**VOCABULARY:** shifting, birthright, kindred, lordly, curlew, gorse, swiftness, baser

- 1) According to the first stanza, does it seem the people from the country like the idea of living in a city? What phrase might lead you to this conclusion?
  - a. *No, they don't seem to like the idea of living in a city. I can see this from the phrase, "Shifting faces".*
- 2) If you look at the different things the speaker chooses to focus on, what kinds of things are most important to the speaker?
  - a. *Nature and animals seem to be the most important.*
- 3) Are you from the city or the country? What do you most value about the place where you live?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

**"THE TREE"**

**VOCABULARY:** rootlet, crown, bore, quivering, laden

- 1) What are the three examples of personification we see in this poem?
  - a. *The tree, the frost, and the wind all talk and are therefore examples of personification.*
- 2) What is the rhyme scheme for this poem?
  - a. *AABBA*
- 3) Why doesn't the tree want the frost and the wind to take away its leaf buds and blossoms?
  - a. *The tree doesn't want them to take away the leaf buds and blossoms because it is saving them so that it can let the little girl have all of the fruit.*
- 4) In what ways could the relationship between the tree and the little girl be like the relationship between a person and God?
  - a. *These relationships could be similar because God wants the very best of us and our love. He doesn't want us to give parts of ourselves away to others; instead He wants our love to mature and to be given to Him.*

**"THE GOOD JOAN"**

**VOCABULARY:** brief, thrush, gale

- 1) What simile do we see in the first stanza? Copy the line that includes the simile and state what is being compared.
  - a. *"Swift as a glance... Good Joan of Arc goes riding by." The two things being compared are the quickness of Joan of Arc and how fast a glance is.*
- 2) Joan of Arc is a symbol in this poem. What is she symbolic of?
  - a. *She is a symbol of hope for the people of France.*

- 3) Joan of Arc was determined to defend her country and was very brave in doing so. What is a time where you have felt either of these things?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*
- 4) What is the refrain in this poem?
  - a. *"Good Joan of Arc goes riding by."*

#### **"THE GIRAFFE"**

**VOCABULARY:** vastness, incredibly, murmuring, witness, emerald

- 1) What is the simile mentioned in the beginning of the first stanza that carries throughout the entire stanza? Copy the simile and then identify what is being compared.
  - a. *"He moves like a ship in the vastness and stillness of space". The giraffe and its movements are being compared to a ship and its movements.*
- 2) What is the metaphor in the second stanza? Copy the metaphor and then identify what is being compared.
  - a. *"His skin is the play of the sun on the murmuring wave." The pattern on the skin of the giraffe is being compared to the way the water hits the waves in the ocean.*
- 3) What is the emerald cave the speaker mentions in the last line?
  - a. *Since a giraffe probably wouldn't be able to fit into an actual cave, the author is referring to a grove of trees where the giraffe takes refuge for the night.*

#### **"TO THE SUN FROM A FLOWER"**

**VOCABULARY:** fare, splendor

- 1) In what ways are we like the flower and God is like the sun in this poem?
  - a. *We are like the flower because we are small and look up to God. God is like the sun because he is big and full of glory and he gives life to us, just like the sun gives life to the flower.*
- 2) What are the flower's feelings toward the sun?
  - a. *The flower adores the sun and hopes that the sun will remember the flower, even though the sun is much bigger.*

#### **"ADORATION OF THE DISK"**

**VOCABULARY:** roam, adoration

- 1) What is the sun a symbol of in this poem?
  - a. *The sun is a symbol of God.*
- 2) Choose two of the animals the poet mentions and describe the way in which they adore the sun/God.
  - a. *Answers will vary, but they should come from the following list: the cattle roam, the birds flutter and lift their wings, the flocks run with delight, the deep sea fish swim to the surface, and the chick chirps and dances.*
- 3) If we think of adoration as a positive, happy thing, what words does the poet use that are happy and positive to help illustrate this point?
  - a. *The poet uses words like "flutter", "delight", "pleasant", "dazzling", "joy", and "dancing".*

#### **"VOCATION"**

**VOCABULARY:** vocation, hawker

- 1) The child in the poem likes each of the jobs, or vocations, that they describe for different reasons. List the job and tell why the child is drawn to it.
  - a. *The child wants to be a hawker because he doesn't have to be anywhere at any particular time. The child wants to be a gardener because he would be allowed to dig as he likes and not have to worry about being in trouble for getting dirty. The child wants to be the watchman because he doesn't have to go to bed.*
- 2) What is the simile we see in the third stanza? Write the simile and identify what is being compared.
  - a. *The simile is, "the street lamp stands like a giant with one red eye in its head." The light of the streetlamp and the angry red eye of the giant are being compared.*
- 3) The child wants to "be" all of these people because they are all able or allowed to do things that he isn't. Describe a time where you felt like the child and wanted to do something that you weren't able or allowed to do.
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

### **"THOUGHT OF A LITTLE GIRL"**

**VOCABULARY:** mad-cap

- 1) There are many examples of personification in this poem! What different parts of nature are personified?
  - a. *Flowers, clouds, wind, leaves, and daisies are all personified in this poem.*
- 2) In this poem, there is an example of alliteration, two or more words having the same beginning sound when the words are next to each other. What alliteration do you see in this poem?
  - a. *"Wind, whispers" (in both the first and last stanzas).*
- 3) What is the speaker's attitude toward the scene she is observing in nature?
  - a. *She enjoys watching the wind play with the different plants.*
- 4) Describe a time where you have watched the wind and its effects on another object in nature. What did you see? What did it look like?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

# Fingal's Quest

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** cavalcade, wattle, serenity, lough, precipitous, tonsure, rampart, Elements

- 1) Why didn't Fingal's father bring him to the school?  
a. *His father was dead.*
- 2) What did Fingal envy?  
a. *The boys arriving with their fathers.*
- 3) How do we know that Fingal is very, very ignorant?  
a. *He does not even know his left from his right.*
- 4) What was the only thing Fingal brought with him?  
a. *His father's leather satchel.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** translucent, benign, refectory, vespers

- 1) Why didn't Cahal want to sleep in the same hut as Fingal?  
a. *Cahal thought Fingal was not good enough for his company.*
- 2) How did Brother Columban respond to Cahal's temper?  
a. *He responded very calmly and peacefully.*
- 3) What did the boys have to build together?  
a. *They built their own hut.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** rhetoric, hypocritical, novitiate, seclusion, docile, nimbus, mutinously

- 1) What gift does Brother Columban give Fingal?  
a. *The Greek alphabet carved on a stone.*
- 2) Describe the miracle Fingal witnesses in the stable.  
a. *Columban instantly heals a dying horse.*
- 3) What draws Fingal to Brother Columban?  
a. *Columban's holiness*
- 4) What makes Fingal feel mutinous?  
a. *Br. Columban tells him Fingal is far from loving God.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** raze, matins, Gaul

- 1) What is Diarmid & Fingal's relationship like now?  
a. *They are very close and enjoy studying together.*
- 2) How have studies been going for Fingal?  
a. *Well. He has perfected his Latin and is doing well in Greek and French.*
- 3) What two miracles happened when Abbott Columcille arrived?  
a. *Brother Baithann was raised from the dead and then his life-long-blind eye was healed.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** limpid, crozier

- 1) Why did Cahal wait until the last moment to "tell on" Fingal and Diarmid?  
a. *In the hopes that the Abbot would humiliate the pair in front of all.*
- 2) What did Fingal and Diarmid do to Cahal?  
a. *They treated him as a stranger.*

- 3) What kinds of things could have happened because of what Fingal and Diarmid tried to do?  
a. *They could have run out of food, the boys could have lengthened or hampered the journey, they could have been endangered.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** truculent

- 1) What started the fight?  
a. *Fingal called Diarmid a "coward."*
- 2) How were the son of a king and a penniless scholar fairly evenly matched in a fight?  
a. *Diarmid had the training befitting the son of a king and Fingal had had to fight all his life because he fit in nowhere.*
- 3) Why did Diarmid never go on top of the liss again?  
a. *It was a special place for him and Fingal and it meant nothing without Fingal.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** massacred, quay, turgid, bedlam, ascetic, Pascal, pagan, querulous, Loire, balustrades, placid

- 1) Where had Guibert housed the horses?  
a. *In a ruined church.*
- 2) Why were the poor people's houses so surprising to Fingal?  
a. *They were filthy and parts of the houses were built of beautiful ruined walls.*
- 3) Why did the boys switch horses?  
a. *Fingal's horse kept throwing him off.*

## CHAPTER 8

- 1) What was the difference between Columban and the clerics who lived in Gaul?  
a. *Columban was profoundly devout. He felt called to do each and every thing he did. His actions always reflected his deep love for God. The clerics who lived in Gaul thought of their positions as merely jobs in the human sense. Everything they did was far more out of self interest than to do God's work.*
- 2) What happened when Thibault stormed out of the house?  
a. *Fingal realized he had stayed way too long and he needed to leave right away to try to find Columban.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** austerities, squalor, dilapidated, turret, Merovingian, benediction, scullions, mountebank

- 1) Who shared a room with Fingal at the inn?  
a. *A soldier*
- 2) What happened that night?  
a. *Robbers tried to break in but were thwarted by the soldier.*
- 3) What was Fingal doing when the robbers attacked him on the road?  
a. *Singing*
- 4) Who took him prisoner?  
a. *Count Thibault*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** malicious, cloister, derisive

- 1) Why does everyone laugh at Fingal?
  - a. *Because he is a follower of God and of Columban.*
- 2) What does Leger ask Fingal to do for him?
  - a. *Teach him to read.*

#### CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** vengeance, arras, braziers

- 1) Why does Lady Ragemunde want to see Fingal?
  - a. *So he can speak with her about God.*
- 2) What happens to Lady Ragemunde?
  - a. *She becomes sick.*
- 3) Who helps Fingal escape?
  - a. *Leger*

#### CHAPTER 12

- 1) Could Thibault name a specific crime that Fingal had done?
  - a. *No*
- 2) Who took Fingal most of the way to the monastery?
  - a. *The soldier whom he had met at the inn.*
- 3) What did not attack Columban that Fingal expected to do so?
  - a. *Wolves*

#### CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** intercession, pantomime

- 1) What saved the dying man from death?
  - a. *A miracle and the entire community giving the man their rations.*
- 2) What saved the community from starvation?
  - a. *Count Thibault sent Charles with a wagon load of food and clothing and blankets to ask for the community's prayers when he had a vision from God.*
- 3) What happened to Lady Ragemunde?
  - a. *She was miraculously healed.*

#### CHAPTER 14

**VOCABULARY:** antiphon, postulate, virago

- 1) What happened to Count Thibault after the miracle was bestowed upon his wife?
  - a. *He became kind to the poor and built a church.*
- 2) Whom does Columban want Fingal to follow?
  - a. *God*

#### CHAPTER 15

**VOCABULARY:** apothecary, candid, countenance

- 1) What did Fingal have to learn to avoid?
  - a. *The chains of human love.*
- 2) Where did Fingal go to become a novice?
  - a. *He went back to Bangor.*
- 3) Did Fingal ever see Columban again?
  - a. *Yes*

# Heidi

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** pungent, insinuate, peculiarities, chemise

- 1) Where did Heidi's Grandfather live?  
a. *He lived on a mountain.*
- 2) What was Heidi's Aunt's name?  
a. *Dete*
- 3) How old was Heidi when she first was taken to her Grandfather's?  
a. *5*
- 4) What had happened to Heidi's parents?  
a. *They died.*
- 5) Who was Peter?  
a. *A goatherd*
- 6) Why was the Alm-Uncle so bitter?  
a. *He drank and gambled his property away when he was young, both of his parents died young, his wife died young before their son had grown up, his son & his son's wife died after only two years of marriage, nobody liked him, everyone gossiped about him, and people told him his troubles came from God as a judgment on his actions.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** subside

- 1) What was Heidi's bed made of?  
a. *Hay*
- 2) What did Heidi do while her grandfather heated the cheese?  
a. *She set the table.*
- 3) What did Heidi's Grandfather make for her?  
a. *He made a stool.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** entice, knoll, exquisite, nimble, precipice, obstinately

- 1) What did Heidi do as she went up the mountain with Peter?  
a. *She picked flowers.*
- 2) Was Peter an honest boy?  
a. *Yes*
- 3) Was Heidi acting charitably when they ate their lunch?  
a. *Yes*
- 4) Why were Heidi's grandfather's goats the prettiest?  
a. *He brushed and washed them and fed them salt.*

## CHAPTER 4

- 1) Why did the grandfather no longer allow her to go up the mountain with Peter?  
a. *The weather began to turn cold.*
- 2) What does Heidi do when she learns that Peter's grandmother is blind?  
a. *She cries.*
- 3) Who did Heidi go visit every day?  
a. *The Grandmother*

- 4) What did Heidi's Grandfather do for Peter's grandmother?
  - a. *He fixed her house.*
- 5) How did Heidi get down the mountain in the winter?
  - a. *She rode a sled with her grandfather.*

#### CHAPTER 5

- 1) What did the Pastor tell the Alm-Uncle he had to do?
  - a. *He must send Heidi to school and make his peace with God.*
- 2) What was the Alm-Uncle's response?
  - a. *He refused*
- 3) What did Dete do to Heidi?
  - a. *Dete took her to Frankfurt.*
- 4) What did Peter do when he heard the news?
  - a. *He beat the table in frustration.*

#### CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** accentuate, forbearance, invalid, vexation

- 1) What was Heidi to do with Klara?
  - a. *Study with her and befriend her.*
- 2) Was Fraulein Rottenmeier happy with Heidi?
  - a. *No*
- 3) What did Heidi do while Fraulein Rottenmeier explained all that was expected of her?
  - a. *She fell asleep.*

#### CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** perplexed, resignedly, beseechingly

- 1) What did Heidi feel like in the big house?
  - a. *She felt like a caged bird.*
- 2) What did Heidi do when the servant announced breakfast?
  - a. *She sat down to wait.*
- 3) What did Heidi see when she finally looked out the window?
  - a. *The street*
- 4) Who showed her how to find the tower, and what did he have with him?
  - a. *A boy with a hand organ and a strange animal.*
- 5) What did Heidi bring for Klara?
  - a. *Kittens*

#### CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** urchin, enraptured, adjoining, intense, yearning, agitation, imploringly

- 1) What made Fräulein Rottenmier stand in a chair?
  - a. *A turtle*
- 2) What came as a present for Klara?
  - a. *Six more kittens.*
- 3) What did Sebastian save for Heidi?
  - a. *Her hat*

#### CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** expedition, society, peculiarities



- 1) What did Klara's Daddy do to Heidi?
  - a. *He let her stay.*
- 2) What did Heidi have to go get for Klara's Daddy?
  - a. *She had to get him a glass of water.*
- 3) Who did Klara's Daddy say was coming?
  - a. *Klara's Grandmother*

#### CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** inclination, absurd, perception, zeal, inquiringly

- 1) When Heidi was so sad she could not tell anyone about it, what did Klara's grandmamma teach her to do?
  - a. *She taught her to pray.*
- 2) What did Heidi learn to do that no one thought she would EVER be able to do?
  - a. *Read*
- 3) Who told Heidi she could do this thing?
  - a. *Grandmamma*
- 4) Explain why Heidi thought for so long she could not learn to do it.
  - a. *Heidi thought she couldn't learn to read because Peter couldn't learn to read.*

#### CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** inconsolably

- 1) Explain how Fräulein Rottenmeier got Heidi to stop crying all the time.
  - a. *Frauline Rottenmeir told Heidi she would take her book away if she didn't stop crying.*
- 2) Why was Heidi so upset?
  - a. *She was homesick.*
- 3) What was Heidi's favorite possession?
  - a. *The book the grandmamma gave her.*

#### CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** uncanny, venture, suspicions, punctually, candelabra, revolver, protégée

- 1) What made Fräulein Rottenmeier think there was a ghost in the house?
  - a. *The door was left open.*
- 2) Who came home to resolve the problem?
  - a. *Herr Sesemann*
- 3) What was the ghost?
  - a. *Heidi sleepwalking.*

#### CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** dispatched, vestibule, acquainted, conspicuous, absorbed

- 1) Why did Klara's father wake up Fräulein Rottenmier and the rest of the household at four in the morning?
  - a. *He woke everyone up so Heidi could be taken home.*
- 2) Who took Heidi home?
  - a. *Sebastian*
- 3) Who was Heidi happiest to see?
  - a. *She was happiest to see her Grandfather.*

## CHAPTER 14

**VOCABULARY:** obstinately, prodigal, askance

- 1) What present did Heidi give to the grandmother?
  - a. *Rolls*
- 2) What book did Heidi read from to the grandmother?
  - a. *The hymnal*
- 3) How did she like it?
  - a. *She loved it.*
- 4) What story did Heidi read to her grandfather?
  - a. *The Prodigal Son*
- 5) Where did Heidi and her grandfather go that surprised everyone?
  - a. *They went to church.*

## CHAPTER 15

**VOCABULARY:** wan, derive, reproach, obliged

- 1) Why did the doctor have to go visit Heidi instead of Klara and her father?
  - a. *Klara had become too weak.*
- 2) Why was Klara "happily disappointed?"
  - a. *She had expected a struggle with Fraulein Rottenmeier about all the presents she wanted her to pack, but the Fraulein was "unusually good natured" about it.*

## CHAPTER 16

**VOCABULARY:** vigorously, peevishly, reception

- 1) How did Heidi react to the disappointment of not being able to see Klara for another six months?
  - a. *Though she was sad, she was appreciative of the doctor being there.*

## CHAPTER 17

**VOCABULARY:** excursion

- 1) What did Peter do while Heidi sat talking with the doctor? Why?
  - a. *He hid and shook his fist at him, because he was jealous of not having Heidi to himself.*
- 2) What gift did the doctor give to Peter?
  - a. *A huge piece of meat.*
- 3) What did Peter do?
  - a. *He secretly opened his hands to make atonement for what he had done before.*
- 4) What did the doctor wish he could do?
  - a. *He wanted to take Heidi back to Frankfurt.*

## CHAPTER 18

**VOCABULARY:** spacious, wainscoting, descent, desertion, colonel, truant, unruly

- 1) Where did the grandfather take Heidi in October? Why?
  - a. *To Dörfli to spend the winter where she could attend school.*
- 2) How did the goats like their new home?
  - a. *They did not like it.*
- 3) What happened to Peter when he went down the mountain after the snow froze?
  - a. *He could not stop his sled and went past Dörfli and Mayenfeld*
- 4) What was Heidi's biggest concern?
  - a. *To be able to visit Peter's grandmother.*

## CHAPTER 19

**VOCABULARY:** dumbfounded, anguish

- 1) Explain how Heidi taught Peter to read.
  - a. *She sat down with him every day and made him concentrate on an ABC poem then threatened him if he did not learn. When he could read, she made him read to the Grandmother every day.*
- 2) Why did Peter's readings of the hymns sound different than when Heidi read them?
  - a. *He skipped the hard words.*

## CHAPTER 20

**VOCABULARY:** chasm, ravine, enthusiastic, impenetrable

- 1) How was Klara able to come up the mountainside?
  - a. *Some men carried her in a sedan chair.*
- 2) What did Klara do during supper that surprised her grandmamma?
  - a. *She ate a second piece of toasted cheese.*
- 3) What did they decide to do with Klara that made the girls so excited?
  - a. *They decided to let her stay in the hut on the mountain with Heidi and her grandfather for four weeks.*
- 4) How did Heidi's grandfather and Klara's grandmamma get along?
  - a. *They got along very well.*

## CHAPTER 21

**VOCABULARY:** crag, laden

- 1) Where did Heidi and Klara pen their letters to Klara's grandmamma?
  - a. *Always outside.*
- 2) How did Peter feel about Klara staying with Heidi?
  - a. *He was very jealous and hated Klara for it.*
- 3) What did Klara pray every day?
  - a. *She praised God for letting her be there in the mountains.*
- 4) What did Klara's grandmamma send for Heidi and Klara?
  - a. *Beds*

## CHAPTER 22

**VOCABULARY:** upholstered, venture, sorrel

- 1) What did Peter do the day the girls were to come up to the pasture with him?
  - a. *He pushed Klara's chair down the mountainside where it broke into pieces.*
- 2) What did Heidi make Peter help her do?
  - a. *She made him help her help Klara walk to the field of flowers.*
- 3) What was more wonderful than the beautiful field of flowers?
  - a. *That Klara walked on her own.*
- 4) What scared Peter?
  - a. *He was afraid someone would find out that he had pushed the wheelchair down the mountainside and he would be sent to jail.*
- 5) What did Klara do for a week?
  - a. *She practiced walking.*

## CHAPTER 23

**VOCABULARY:** dispatch, beckon, benefactor, petrified, assent, reprovably, wrought

- 1) What surprise did the grandmamma receive when she reached the hut?
  - a. *Klara walked to her.*
- 2) What surprise arrived for everyone not long after the grandfather sent Peter down the mountain with the message?
  - a. *Klara's father had come to see Klara.*
- 3) How did the grandmamma treat Peter when she found out he had broken the wheelchair?
  - a. *She forgave him and gave him money for the rest of his life.*
- 4) For what did Heidi request of the grandmamma?
  - a. *She asked for her bed from Frankfurt to be given to Peter's grandmother.*

# The Hobbit

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** discreet, depredations, fender, audacious, conspirator, remuneration

- 1) What was the most important thing in the world to a Hobbit?
  - a. *His comfort.*
- 2) Describe a Hobbit.
  - a. *They are short, chubby, wear no shoes, have soft curly hair on their feet, have no beards, wear bright colors, and are very quiet.*
- 3) What special thing did Bilbo remember about Gandalf?
  - a. *His fireworks.*
- 4) What did Bilbo do when Gandalf asked him if he wanted to go on an adventure?
  - a. *He told him no, he did not want any adventures but invited him to tea the next day.*
- 5) Who came to tea with Gandalf?
  - a. *Thirteen dwarves.*
- 6) Who did all the cooking?
  - a. *Bilbo.*
- 7) Who did all the cleaning?
  - a. *All the dwarves except Thorin.*
- 8) According to the story, how was the game of golf invented?
  - a. *Bullroarer Took cut off goblin king Gollum's head in battle. The head flew quite far and rolled into a rabbit hole, and the game was invented.*
- 9) What did Thrór's map tell them that they did not already know?
  - a. *The location of a secret door in the side of The Mountain.*
- 10) What dreadful thing were they expecting to face once they got to the Mountain?
  - a. *Smaug, the dragon.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** requisite, paraphernalia, obliged, inquisitive, canny, cavalcade, purloined, row, incantations, scabbards, hilts

- 1) What did Bilbo bring with him when he went to meet the dwarves at the Green Dragon Inn?
  - a. *Nothing.*
- 2) What did Bilbo find when Thorin sent him to investigate the light in the woods?
  - a. *He found a large fire and three trolls.*
- 3) What happened when Bilbo tried to steal William's purse?
  - a. *The purse asked who he was and William grabbed Bilbo by the neck.*
- 4) What happened to all the dwarves as they came to find Bilbo?
  - a. *The trolls put them into sacks.*
- 5) How did Gandalf save them all?
  - a. *He kept the trolls arguing until the dawn came. Then the three trolls turned to stone.*
- 6) How did they get inside the troll's cave?
  - a. *Bilbo found the key that had fallen during the fight.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** parapet, venerable

- 1) What was the adventuresome party's mood like now?
  - a. *They were grumpy and miserable.*
- 2) How did the elves greet the traveling party?
  - a. *By singing to them.*
- 3) What did Elrond find on the map that neither Gandalf nor Thorin found?
  - a. *Moon letters.*
- 4) What new information did it give them?
  - a. *How to find the key hole to the secret door in the lonely mountain.*

#### CHAPTER 4

- 1) What was it like to climb into the Misty Mountains?
  - a. *It was cold and boulders kept falling.*
- 2) Where did the party find shelter?
  - a. *In a cave.*
- 3) What did Gandalf do to the smoke rings?
  - a. *He turned them different colors and made them dance on the ceiling.*
- 4) What came through the crack at the back of the cave?
  - a. *Goblins.*
- 5) Who woke everyone up?
  - a. *Bilbo.*
- 6) Who was taken and who was not?
  - a. *The dwarves and Bilbo were taken and Gandalf was not.*
- 7) Why did their captors order them locked away in a pit full of snakes never to see the light of day again?
  - a. *They had Biter (Orcrist) and Beater (Glamdring the Foehammer) with them, both of which had killed many goblins in the past.*
- 8) How did they get away?
  - a. *Gandalf showed up, extinguished the lights, and led them away.*

#### CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** subterranean, scrumptious, menace, ventured

- 1) What did Bilbo find that was the turning point of his career, though he did not know it?
  - a. *A ring.*
- 2) What did he discover about his little sword?
  - a. *It was an elvish blade that would glow when goblins were around.*
- 3) What did Bilbo fall into?
  - a. *Water; a subterranean lake.*
- 4) What did Gollum like to eat?
  - a. *Blind fish and goblins.*
- 5) What did he want to do with Bilbo?
  - a. *Eat him.*
- 6) What did the two of them do?
  - a. *They asked each other riddles.*
- 7) What did Bilbo finally ask that stumped Gollum?
  - a. *"What is in my pocket?"*
- 8) What had Gollum lost?
  - a. *A ring of power that would turn its wearer invisible; his precious; his birthday present.*

- 9) Being invisible, Bilbo could have killed or at least wounded Gollum, his pursuer, to get away.  
Why didn't he?
  - a. *He felt pity for Gollum who was trapped in utter darkness.*
- 10) What was waiting for Bilbo at the doorway to the outside?
  - a. *Goblins in full armor.*
- 11) Did Bilbo escape?
  - a. *Yes.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** abominable, confusticate, pinnacle, tumult, eyrie, precipice

- 1) How did Bilbo find the party?
  - a. *He ran right into them.*
- 2) How had the dwarves escaped?
  - a. *Gandalf did more magic and they all ran. They came out by the same back door that Bilbo had.*
- 3) Why did they need to hurry away?
  - a. *The goblins come out in force at night.*
- 4) What happened that moved them along faster, and what saved them?
  - a. *A landslide; the trees saved them.*
- 5) Why is this CHAPTER called "Out of the Frying Pan and into the Fire?"
  - a. *They escaped from the goblins only to be entrapped by wargs.*
- 6) Why were the wargs meeting in the clearing?
  - a. *They were joining forces with the goblins to raid nearby villages. They planned to kill all but a few people whom they planned to enslave.*
- 7) How did Gandalf know their plans?
  - a. *He knew how to speak the dreadful language of the wargs.*
- 8) What did Gandalf do to thwart the wargs' plans?
  - a. *He threw pine cones lit with magic fire at them.*
- 9) What did the goblins do when they got there?
  - a. *They organized the wargs while laughing at them. Then they put out some of the fires and built up the fires around the dwarves', Bilbo's, and Gandalf's trees.*
- 10) How did the party escape?
  - a. *The great ancient race of eagles who lived in the Misty Mountains had seen the fires and then the columns of goblins. They flew away with the party, and they scattered the goblins and wolves.*
- 11) What did the eagles do with the prisoners?
  - a. *They planned to fly them as far along their way as they dared in the morning, fed them well, and let them sleep comfortably.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** mead

- 1) What did everyone do once the eagles had left them?
  - a. *They took a bath in the river.*
- 2) Why did Gandalf send the party to Beorn's house by two, five minutes apart?
  - a. *Beorn was not overly friendly and Gandalf wanted the interruptions to help add suspense to his story.*
- 3) What was unusual about Beorn's animals?
  - a. *They spoke with him and acted like his servants.*

- 4) What impressed Beorn about the dwarves after he questioned the warg and the goblin?
  - a. *That they really had killed the Great Goblin.*
- 5) What did Beorn give the party when they left his house and what was his one condition?
  - a. *Plenty of food, a pony for each of them, and a horse for Gandalf; they had to send the ponies back once they reached Mirkwood.*
- 6) Who guarded the party until they reached Mirkwood?
  - a. *Beorn as a bear.*
- 7) What final piece of advice did Gandalf give as he left the party and entered Mirkwood?
  - a. *To stay on the path.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** queer, taut, disquieting, tuppence, quoits

- 1) What was it like in Mirkwood?
  - a. *Dark and foreboding with little food and no water.*
- 2) How did Bilbo get them across the black water?
  - a. *He saw a boat across the water, and everyone followed his directions to get the boat back to their side of the water.*
- 3) What happened to Bombur?
  - a. *A deer flew by, and he fell into the enchanted stream. He fell into a deep sleep.*
- 4) How did the dwarves lose their arrows?
  - a. *They did not listen to Thorin and shot at a white deer.*
- 5) What did Bombur remember when he woke up?
  - a. *The last thing he remembered was the party in May at Bilbo's house.*
- 6) Why did they leave the path?
  - a. *They saw lights and were hoping for a feast.*
- 7) What happened to the lights every time one of the walked into them?
  - a. *They all went out.*
- 8) What did Bilbo kill all by himself and what did that deed do for him?
  - a. *A giant spider; it gave him confidence.*
- 9) Why did Bilbo finally explain how he could vanish?
  - a. *He had to explain it to them when he wanted to be a decoy so the rest could get away from the spiders.*
- 10) What had happened to Thorin?
  - a. *He had been taken by the wood elves.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** portcullis

- 1) Who took the dwarves prisoner now?
  - a. *The wood elves.*
- 2) Why didn't they take Bilbo prisoner?
  - a. *He slipped on his ring and followed along quietly.*
- 3) What did Bilbo do while the dwarves were in prison?
  - a. *He burgled some food for himself, tried to follow the hunters, looked for ways to help everyone escape, and learned as much as he could about the wood elves.*
- 4) How did Bilbo help everyone to escape?
  - a. *He learned how they floated barrels down the river, waited until two of the guards were asleep/drunk, stole the prison keys, let everyone out, and packed*



*everyone into the barrels. The elves put the barrels into the river, and the dwarves were free.*

- 5) How did Bilbo himself escape?
  - a. *He grabbed onto the last barrel, holding onto it from the outside, and drifted with the others.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** bickering, Wain, promontory, floundering, solemnities, vagabond, molesting, enmity, quays, obscure, fortnight, circuitous

- 1) Why was it lucky for the party that they had been captured by wood elves and that Bilbo had found the river as a way of escaping?
  - a. *The roads out of Mirkwood had all vanished under swamp and water or had become too dangerous for travelers.*
- 2) How did Thorin announce himself to the men of Lake Town?
  - a. *He announced himself as Thorin son of Thrain son of Thror King under the Mountain.*
- 3) How did the town treat him and his party?
  - a. *Like welcome kings; they celebrated his return.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** brooded

- 1) What were the dwarves looking for on the mountain?
  - a. *The secret door.*
- 2) Could they open it right away?
  - a. *No.*
- 3) What happened when they used their tools?
  - a. *The tools broke.*
- 4) Why did no bird sing on the higher parts of the mountain?
  - a. *"Danger brooded in every rock."*
- 5) Explain how they opened the secret door.
  - a. *They had all given up hope of getting in. Bilbo sat watching the door. Then he figured out that the moonbeam needed to shine on the keyhole. He called everyone up, and a moonbeam shone on the keyhole. Thorin inserted and turned the key. Everyone pushed, and the secret door opened.*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** inevitable, perplexed, calamities, grievous, antiquated, dubious

- 1) Are dwarves heroes?
  - a. *No.*
- 2) Who followed Bilbo part of the way down the tunnel?
  - a. *Balin.*
- 3) What did Bilbo see at the root of the mountain?
  - a. *Smaug, the dragon, sleeping on treasure.*
- 4) What did Bilbo steal?
  - a. *A cup.*
- 5) What colors were Smaug's fire?
  - a. *Green and scarlet.*
- 6) Bilbo was invisible and silent. How did Smaug know he was there?
  - a. *He smelled Bilbo.*

- 7) Where was Smaug's weak point?
  - a. *In the hollow of his left breast.*

### CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** adornments, mouldered, dominion

- 1) What did Bilbo find in the treasure room and put in his pocket?
  - a. *The Arkenstone.*
- 2) Why did they decide to leave the treasure room?
  - a. *Bilbo avoided the "bewitchment" of the lure to just wallow in the treasure and reminded them of the dragon.*
- 3) How did they get out of the Lonely Mountain?
  - a. *Through the Front Gate where the Running River begins.*

### CHAPTER 14

**VOCABULARY:** deposed, recompense, contrived

- 1) Who killed Smaug?
  - a. *Bard.*
- 2) How did he know of the dragon's weakness?
  - a. *The thrush that had sat with the dwarves and Bilbo when Bilbo told them of the dragon's weakness told Bard.*
- 3) What did the men of Lake Town call Bard when he came out of the lake?
  - a. *King Bard.*

### CHAPTER 15

**VOCABULARY:** carrion, decrepit, parley, succored

- 1) Who told the dwarves tidings of Smaug's death?
  - a. *The old raven, Roac.*
- 2) Who did he tell them was coming to get the dwarves' treasure?
  - a. *The elves and the men of Lake Town.*
- 3) What was his advice to the dwarves?
  - a. *To share the treasure.*
- 4) What did Thorin ask him to do?
  - a. *He asked him to go to all of his relatives and ask them for help.*
- 5) What was Thorin's answer to the demands of the Lake Men?
  - a. *An arrow in the shield of the speaker.*
- 6) What was the speaker's reply to that?
  - a. *He declared the mountain besieged and told Thorin to go eat his treasure.*
- 7) What did Bilbo think of this new turn of events?
  - a. *He felt that his services ended with the death of Smaug. He was ready to go home.*

### CHAPTER 16

- 1) Who gave up guard duty for Bilbo?
  - a. *Bombur.*
- 2) What gave Bilbo away?
  - a. *He fell in the water, and then he sneezed.*
- 3) To whom did Bilbo give the Arkenstone?
  - a. *The elven king and Bard.*

- 4) Who was proud of Bilbo?
  - a. *Gandalf.*

## CHAPTER 17

### VOCABULARY: hauberk

- 1) What stopped Dain's attack on the men and the elves?
  - a. *Gandalf pointed out that the goblins and wild wolves were coming to attack.*
- 2) What flew over the goblin army?
  - a. *Bats.*
- 3) Who fought against whom in the Battle of the Five Armies?
  - a. *Men, dwarves, and elves fought against goblins and wild wolves.*
- 4) What happened just when they thought they would defeat the goblins in their trap in the valley?
  - a. *Goblins came over the mountain.*
- 5) What did Bilbo see coming to help them?
  - a. *Eagles.*
- 6) Why didn't Bilbo get to see the final battle?
  - a. *A rock had knocked him out.*

## CHAPTER 18

- 1) Why hadn't anyone found Bilbo while he was unconscious?
  - a. *He was invisible.*
- 2) Who won the battle?
  - a. *The men, dwarves, and elves.*
- 3) Who lay dying and wanting to speak to Bilbo?
  - a. *Thorin.*
- 4) Where and how was he buried?
  - a. *In the deepest part of the mountain with the Arkenstone on his chest.*
- 5) Where were most of the combatants?
  - a. *Chasing the goblins and wargs.*
- 6) Who killed Bolg and truly turned the tide of the battle?
  - a. *Beorn in the form of a bear.*
- 7) Who traveled with Bilbo on the way home?
  - a. *The elves, Gandalf, and Beorn.*

## CHAPTER 19

- 1) Where did Bilbo sleep for a long time?
  - a. *Rivendell/Elrond's house.*
- 2) What did they dig up?
  - a. *The gold they had won from the trolls.*
- 3) What was going on at Bilbo's house when he got there? Why?
  - a. *His things were being auctioned, because they presumed him to be dead.*
- 4) How did he get most of his things back?
  - a. *He had to buy them back.*

# I Am David

## CHAPTERS 1-3

**VOCABULARY:** catastrophe, imperceptibly, quayside, preoccupied, variegated, runnel, lithe, verge, dispassionately, brevity, undulating

### CHAPTER 1

- 1) Did David trust the man who offered him a chance at freedom?
  - a. *No*
- 2) What was the only thing David had ever asked a guard for?
  - a. *A piece of soap.*
- 3) What animal awakened David as it was growing dark one evening?
  - a. *A sheep*
- 4) Why did that animal worry David?
  - a. *Because it meant people would be nearby.*
- 5) How did David get injured?
  - a. *He ran through thorns.*
- 6) What clues do we have so far that tell us David has witnessed horrors in his short life?
  - a. *We glimpse David's reaction to the horrors he has been exposed to through statements like, "... you must not let what you heard or saw penetrate your thoughts," and "He was familiar enough, through his experiences in the camp, with what happened when a man was left without food and water."*
- 7) What eased David's journey to Salonika?
  - a. *He sneaked inside a truck that was driving there.*
- 8) Whose memory helped David get to Salonika?
  - a. *Johannes*
- 9) Why did the Italian sailor find David strange?
  - a. *David had drunk the sailor's wine without knowing it was wine; David did not run away when he was caught; David's eyes looked like the sailor's grandmother's eyes just before she died.*
- 10) In what language did David converse with the sailor?
  - a. *Italian*
- 11) How did the sailor help David?
  - a. *He gave him bread and a lifebelt, and he lowered David over the side near a town, so he would not be discovered.*
- 12) What made David cry?
  - a. *The beauty of Italy.*
- 13) Why did it make David cry?
  - a. *He had never seen such vibrant beautiful colors.*
- 14) What did he decide because of what he saw in that first town in Italy?
  - a. *He decided he wanted to live.*

### CHAPTER 2, first half

- 1) What did David decide one had eyes for?
  - a. *To see beauty.*
- 2) What languages did David know?
  - a. *The languages "they" spoke: French, German, English, Italian, German, Hebrew, and Spanish.*

- 3) What did David do at the stream?
  - a. *He thoroughly washed himself and his clothes.*
- 4) What did David do with the twig?
  - a. *He cleaned all of his nails.*
- 5) What had David eaten all of his life?
  - a. *Only bread and porridge and soup.*
- 6) Why was David concerned about what he did not know?
  - a. *He did not know a lot of things that most people who live in freedom know. That ignorance could cause him to be recaptured.*
- 7) What was the rule in the prison camp that the prisoners had made for themselves?
  - a. *That one must never talk about food.*
- 8) Why couldn't the prisoners ever escape?
  - a. *Because their chances were too slender.*
- 9) What was the one thing David had on his side?
  - a. *He had strong tough muscles, sharp eyes and ears, and he was used to doing without food.*
- 10) What did David hear as he was exploring the town in daylight that surprised him?
  - a. *Pleasant laughter*
- 11) What difference did David notice between the people in this Italian town and the people at the prison camp?
  - a. *The people here were beautiful, especially the women.*
- 12) How did David know a building was a church?
  - a. *Its bell.*
- 13) How did David get the loaf of bread?
  - a. *The man in the shop gave it to him.*

## **CHAPTER 2, second half**

- 1) Why did David count to 100?
  - a. *To remind himself how important it was never to do anything without thinking.*
- 2) What did David believe about countries that had kings?
  - a. *They were free.*
- 3) What did David do with the newspaper?
  - a. *He taught himself to read.*
- 4) What was strange about David's encounter with the woman and the baby?
  - a. *He had never seen a baby before. He was concerned that the baby could not run away and could very easily be hurt. He warned the woman to take very good care of the baby all the time.*
- 5) What was David's first thought the morning after he met the woman with the baby?
  - a. *He wondered if the baby was still safe.*
- 6) What did David think he should have done? Why?
  - a. *He thought he should not have left the baby because he knew all about the dangers in the world while the woman did not know how dangerous it was to be so small.*
- 7) Why did David decide to leave the town where the man gave him bread every day?
  - a. *People had noticed him and wanted to speak with him. He was afraid they would give him back to his captors.*
- 8) What was it about him that people noticed most?
  - a. *His eyes*

### CHAPTER 3

- 1) When David lost his compass, what did he choose to do?
  - a. *He chose a God.*
- 2) What accent of English did David have?
  - a. *Oxford*
- 3) What did David help the English man find?
  - a. *Eyeglasses*
- 4) What did the English lady want from David?
  - a. *She wanted him to smile.*
- 5) What did David practice once he had the mirror?
  - a. *Smiling*
- 6) Why do you think people noticed his eyes were different?
  - a. *Because he was so used to being unhappy and being mistreated and averting his eyes in the camp that his eyes reflected those bad things rather than the happiness found in most people's eyes.*
- 7) What did David do to earn enough money to buy bread for two days?
  - a. *He watched a couple's luggage.*
- 8) What was David determined never to enter?
  - a. *Houses*
- 9) What did David dread giving up?
  - a. *His freedom*
- 10) When the American woman was afraid of giving David money because he might steal it, what did David do to show he was no thief?
  - a. *He politely left all of his possessions with them.*
- 11) How much money did he accept from the Americans?
  - a. *He took no money from them.*
- 12) What did David find in the bottom of his bundle after leaving the Americans?
  - a. *2000 lire*
- 13) What did David buy with the money?
  - a. *A comb, scissors, soap, a loaf of bread, pencil, paper, and cheese.*
- 14) What did David ask of God?
  - a. *To take away his fear and to let the next truck driver be kind and good.*
- 15) When the truck driver asked David which woman he should marry what advice did David offer?
  - a. *He said he should marry the one who was kind and good.*
- 16) What did David want most NOT to be?
  - a. *Greedy*
- 17) Why did David decide Angelo was stupid?
  - a. *Because Angelo asked others to help him decide on something important that he should decide for himself.*

### CHAPTERS 4-6

**VOCABULARY:** provocation, succumbed, inundated, irrepressible, contemplated, emaciated, gramophone, reticent, abominable, obscurity, epaulets

### CHAPTER 4

- 1) What good thing came from the beautiful house?
  - a. *Music*
- 2) Why wouldn't David fight the boy who beat him up?

- a. *Because he did not want to be useless or rotten.*
- 3) What did David do after the boy had beaten him up so that he could feel free again?
  - a. *He bathed*
- 4) What did David think of children? Why?
  - a. *He thought they were dangerous because they could see just how different he was from them.*
- 5) What did David not know how to do that most children know how to do?
  - a. *Play*
- 6) What did David think of the girl who was playing with the two little boys?
  - a. *She was beautiful*
- 7) What did David do for God?
  - a. *He saved a girl from burning to death in a fire.*
- 8) What happened to the little girl's hair?
  - a. *It caught on fire.*
- 9) What did David do for the first time in his life after he saved the girl?
  - a. *He smiled.*
- 10) How did David know God was pleased with David's gift?
  - a. *God had shown him how to smile.*
- 11) When Maria's father said David could stay with them a long time, what did David ask?
  - a. *He asked if he could leave right then if he wanted to.*
- 12) What were some new experiences David had in Maria's house?
  - a. *He slept in a bed, was given fine clothing, was waited on by servants, ate delicious food, saw a painting.*

#### **CHAPTER 5, first half**

- 1) Why was it satisfying for David to learn several words for something?
  - a. *So he could learn nuances and say the appropriate words for various things.*
- 2) What did David asked for when Maria's father asked him if there was anything he wanted?
  - a. *He asked for a book published before 1917.*
- 3) What kinds of play did David enjoy?
  - a. *Things like exercises and ball and races.*
- 4) What kinds of play did David not understand and refused to play?
  - a. *Make believe*
- 5) What game made David say "Everybody has a right to his life and freedom, and anyone who takes them away has lost his own right to be a human being?"
  - a. *They wanted to play soldiers and prisoners.*
- 6) Whom did Carlo remind David of?
  - a. *The guards at the concentration camp.*
- 7) What did David think of Maria?
  - a. *He thought she was beautiful and good and needed to be protected.*
- 8) Why was David regretting his story about being a part of a circus?
  - a. *He could not ask about countries, because if he had been traveling around in a circus, he would already know about countries.*

#### **CHAPTER 5, second half**

- 1) What had The Man given David while he was in the concentration camp that David had thought was some kind of poison?
  - a. *Milk and vitamins*

- 2) What had The Man done to make him consume them?
  - a. *He had threatened to shoot another prisoner.*
- 3) Why do you think The Man threatened David to make sure he told no one about what he was giving David when the guards were all so openly cruel and abusive to all the prisoners?
  - a. *Abusing the prisoners was acceptable, but giving them something that was good and good for them was not allowed. They were to be treated as less than human.*
- 4) What did Maria's mother say David's eyes were like?
  - a. *She said they were the eyes of an old man.*
- 5) Why do you think his eyes looked like that?
  - a. *Because he was not loved and protected when he was very young. He was exposed to horrors in the concentration camp that no child should see.*
- 6) What does Maria's mother think of David's smile?
  - a. *She thinks it is beautiful, like he had never smiled before seeing Maria.*
- 7) What are Maria's mother's arguments for sending David on his way?
  - a. *He does not play like the other children, he seems much older than he is, she doesn't understand him, he tells Maria about bad things so she can protect herself, he refuses to let go of his hatred of Carlo, her children are being influenced by him, she knows he lied about the circus*
- 8) What are Maria's father's arguments for keeping David?
  - a. *He saved Maria, the children all have become politer and less argumentative around him, he is very intelligent.*
- 9) What do Maria's parents decide must be done with David?
  - a. *He must tell them about his past then they would pay for whatever needed to be done to see him safe and happy.*
- 10) Do you agree with what David had to say in his letter to Maria's parents? Why or why not?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 11) What did David do to Maria that he had never done before?
  - a. *He touched her of his own free will—he put his hands on her shoulders*

## CHAPTER 6

- 1) What would you explain to David about "the God of the Roman Catholics?"
  - a. *Answers will vary, but should include the fact that there is only one God.*
- 2) What did David call his God?
  - a. *"The God of the green pastures."*
- 3) What did David ask of the priest?
  - a. *He asked for a map of Italy.*
- 4) What did David do at the train station?
  - a. *He translated for tourists, carried luggage, and earned enough to have bread for several days.*
- 5) What did David read in the newspaper?
  - a. *An advertisement to him from the children's parents telling him they believed him and he was welcome to come back.*
- 6) Why would nothing ever be the same for David since he lived in the house?
  - a. *He now knew what nice living was like, so it was harder to endure hardships. He had also let down his indifferences, and let himself have feelings for Maria.*
- 7) What did the lady by the lake want of David?
  - a. *She wanted to paint him.*
- 8) Where was she from?



- a. *Denmark*
- 9) What did she say of David to the man who asked her if she wanted to go sailing?
  - a. *She said, "Someone has broken his spirit."*
- 10) How had David gotten into the concentration camp?
  - a. *His parents lived in a foreign country and his father had not been careful about what he said. They were all arrested, even David, who was only a year old.*

## CHAPTERS 7-8

**VOCABULARY:** precipice, despised, kiosk, apprehensive, apathetic, interrogate

### CHAPTER 7

- 1) How had David's mother escaped from the concentration camp?
  - a. *The Man had loved her and had helped her escape.*
- 2) Why had Johannes been spared the worst treatment?
  - a. *Because he looked after David.*
- 3) Why had the Man kept David alive and as well as possible and then let him escape at great personal risk to himself?
  - a. *Because of his love for David's mother.*
- 4) What was the farmer's boy like?
  - a. *He loved giving pain to living creatures and he broke anything he played with.*
- 5) Why would the boy get in trouble when he hurt animals?
  - a. *Because the animals were worth money.*
- 6) In what language did the farmer and his family speak?
  - a. *German*
- 7) In what language did David speak to the dog?
  - a. *Italian*
- 8) What were the farmer's plans for David?
  - a. *To work him as a slave, treating him cruelly all the while then hand him over to the police in the spring.*
- 9) Why was it a blessing that the farmer imprisoned David?
  - a. *He would otherwise have died in the mountain snows.*
- 10) What conclusion did David make about Carlo while he was in the stable prison?
  - a. *Carlo wasn't bad, just stupid.*
- 11) How did David escape the farmer?
  - a. *He tunneled out through the snow.*

### CHAPTER 8

- 1) What did David do once he had Swiss money?
  - a. *He wrote and sent a letter to Carlo.*
- 2) What did David do for the first time as the Swiss truck driver left him?
  - a. *Waved goodbye*
- 3) Why did people marvel at King?
  - a. *Because he was so obedient even when David spoke softly to him.*
- 4) Whom did David find that worried him very much?
  - a. *"Them"*
- 5) In fear for his life, what did David pray for?
  - a. *That the dog would be safe and find a good home*

- 6) What did King do for David?  
a. *It distracted the guards so David could get by them and it was killed.*
- 7) How does David find his mother's address?  
a. *He finds her in the telephone book.*
- 8) How does the story end?  
a. *David arrives at his mother's door and simply says, "Madame...I am David..."  
She says, "David...my son David..."*

# Island of the Blue Dolphins

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** cormorant, mesa, ravine

- 1) Who is the narrator of the novel?
  - a. *Karana*
- 2) What is the name of the Native American's village on the island?
  - a. *Ghalas-at*
- 3) What is different about the reactions of Karana and her younger brother, Ramo, when they realize the ship is approaching?
  - a. *Ramo is excited and runs to see what is happening. Karana stays and continues her job of gathering roots.*
- 4) Why doesn't Chief Chowig agree to the hunt in the beginning?
  - a. *He does not think the price the Aleuts offer is fair. He wants the spilt to be fifty-fifty.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** leagues, tide, canyon, dusk, glistening

- 1) What two reasons does Karana suggest might be why the island is called the Island of the Blue Dolphins?
  - a. *It is called that because of the shape of the island or the dolphins that live around it.*
- 2) What warning does the chief give to the people in Ghalas-at?
  - a. *Stay away from the camp and not to make friends with the Aleuts*
- 3) Chief Chowig does not agree to share the fish with the Aleuts. Why do you think he refuses?
  - a. *He wants to have enough for his people.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** kelp, pelts, skimming, carcass

- 1) Why does Karana not want to go and watch the hunting as other members of her village did?
  - a. *She feels the otters are her friends and is angry they were being hunted.*
- 2) What concerns does Karana share with her father?
  - a. *The hunters will kill all of the otters and there will not be any left.*
- 3) What signs do the villagers observe that makes them believe the Aleuts would be leaving soon?
  - a. *The woman cleaned her apron; the captain trimmed his beard; the men worked harder at getting the otters skinned.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** brush, spearhead, barred

- 1) Why does the chief refuse the one chest of goods that Captain Orlov gives him?
  - a. *He thinks it is not enough to balance the amount of otter the Aleuts had hunted.*
- 2) How does the battle end?
  - a. *The Aleuts won, boarded their ship, and sailed off.*
- 3) At the end of the battle, Chief Chowig has been killed. What do the people of the village believe caused him not to survive the fight?
  - a. *He was weakened because he shared his secret name with the Aleut.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** headland, shirkers, portioned, abalones, tunas

- 1) How many men are alive at the end of the battle?
  - a. 15
- 2) Who is elected to be the new chief?
  - a. *Kimki*
- 3) How do things change for the people?
  - a. *The women had to do some of the work that the men had always done before.*
- 4) Why are the islanders so unhappy that winter?
  - a. *They were all remembering the family and friends that they had lost.*
- 5) Why does the new chief leave the island?
  - a. *He went to find a new place for them to live.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** shrouded, meal

- 1) What concern do the islanders have?
  - a. *They are worried the Aleuts will come back. What do they do to prepare? They gather supplies and prepare the canoes so they can leave quickly.*
- 2) What is different about the ship that arrives?
  - a. *It has white sails.*
- 3) Why does the ship come to the island?
  - a. *To take the islanders to the place Kimki has found.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** anchored, beckoned

- 1) Why are the villagers hurrying to pack and head to the ship?
  - a. *A storm is coming and the ship will have to leave soon.*
- 2) Why is Ramo not on the ship with the other islanders?
  - a. *He went back to get his spear.*
- 3) What does Karana do when she realizes Ramo is not on the ship?
  - a. *She jumps off the ship and swims back to the shore.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** scurrying, gorged, lair, vowed

- 1) When Karana and Ramo get back to the village, what do they find?
  - a. *The wild dogs have eaten all the food.*
- 2) Why doesn't Karana try to find Ramo when she wakes up and he is gone?
  - a. *She thinks he has gone to get the canoe and decides to let him surprise her.*
- 3) What has happened to Ramo when Karana finally finds him?
  - a. *He has been attacked and killed by the wild dogs.*
- 4) What does Karana vow to do?
  - a. *Kill all of the wild dogs.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** stunted, forbade, trinkets, slinking, sinews

- 1) Why does Karana decide to leave the village forever?
  - a. *She has too many memories.*
- 2) Why does she not make her own weapons?

- a. *In her tribe, women are not allowed to make weapons.*
- 3) Why does Karana throw all the beautiful necklaces and earrings into the ocean?
  - a. *The memories of the battle are too strong.*
- 4) How do you think Karana feels as winter and spring pass and the ship has still not come?
  - a. *lonely, sad, scared, etc.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** ancestors, omen, chafing

- 1) Why does Karana decide she must leave the island?
  - a. *She has too many bad memories and is too lonely.*
- 2) When does she begin to feel afraid?
  - a. *When she looks back and sees the island has disappeared.*
- 3) Why does Karana head back to the island?
  - a. *The canoe is leaking.*
- 4) Why is she happy when the dolphins join her?
  - a. *They are a good omen.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** sheltered, brackish

- 1) What signs fill Karana with happiness upon her return to the island?
  - a. *The otter, the flying gulls, the tides, etc.*
- 2) What conclusion does she come to?
  - a. *The island is her home and she will not leave until the white men come in their ships to get her.*
- 3) What does Karana decide she must do next?
  - a. *Build a home and safe place for herself and her food.*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** gnawed, scarce, legend

- 1) What does Karana use to build the fence around her house?
  - a. *Whale rib bones.*
- 2) Why does it take her so long to build her house?
  - a. *It is hard to find wood for the poles.*
- 3) What other things does Karana make for herself?
  - a. *Utensils, cooking bowls, baskets for water.*

## CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** pursuer, flank

- 1) Why does Karana want a tusk from a sea elephant?
  - a. *They make good spearheads.*
- 2) Which bull does she decide to kill? Why?
  - a. *The younger one because he is smaller.*
- 3) What do you think caused the two bulls to begin fighting?
  - a. *The younger bull was moving into the territory of the older bull.*
- 4) Why does Karana go home?
  - a. *She hurt her leg and it was getting dark.*

## CHAPTER 14

**VOCABULARY:** stalking, venturing, ancestors

- 1) Why does Karana stay in her house for five days?
  - a. *Her leg is hurt and swollen.*
- 2) Why does she finally leave?
  - a. *She has run out of water.*
- 3) What does Karana decide about the cave she finds near the spring?
  - a. *She will use it as a second home in case she gets hurt or sick again.*
- 4) Why does she go back to the place where the sea elephants live?
  - a. *She wants to get tusks to use for spearheads.*

## CHAPTER 15

**VOCABULARY:** quivering, paces

- 1) Why does Karana go to the lair of the wild dogs?
  - a. *To kill the leader.*
- 2) Why do you think Karana chose not to kill the leader?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*
- 3) Why does she take him back to her place?
  - a. *To help him heal.*
- 4) How do her feelings about the leader of the wild dogs change?
  - a. *She finds out that she likes him there and decides to name him.*

## CHAPTER 16

**VOCABULARY:** abandoned, plank

- 1) Why does Karana decide to work on the canoe?
  - a. *So it will be ready if the Aleuts come back and she needs to flee.*
- 2) Why is Karana no longer lonely?
  - a. *She now has Rontu.*
- 3) What great discovery do Karana and Rontu make?
  - a. *The cave where she can hide the canoe.*

## CHAPTER 17

**VOCABULARY:** barbed, haunches, crouching

- 1) What does Karana make her new spear out of? What is the spear for?
  - a. *She makes it out of a sea elephant tusk and uses it to hunt the devilfish.*
- 2) Why does Rontu not join Karana in the cove?
  - a. *He left the night before and she has not seen him.*
- 3) Why doesn't Karana break up the fight?
  - a. *She knows they will just fight again later and then the situation may not be as favorable for Rontu.*
- 4) How does Rontu show that he is the winner of the fight?
  - a. *He howls from the top of the hill.*

## CHAPTER 18

**VOCABULARY:** stunted, perching

- 1) What time of year is it at the beginning of the chapter?
  - a. *Spring*
- 2) Why does Karana clip the birds' wings?

- a. *So they cannot fly away.*
- 3) What does Karana make her new skirt and sandals from?
  - a. *Twine made from yucca fibers.*

## CHAPTER 19

**VOCABULARY:** reef, crevice, sought

- 1) How do the gulls open the scallops that Karana was also gathering?
  - a. *They fly high and drop them onto the reef.*
- 2) Why does Rontu drop the fish that Karana had given him?
  - a. *He saw the devilfish.*
- 3) How does Karana catch the devilfish?
  - a. *She uses a spear and her knife.*
- 4) What do you think is the common name for the devilfish?
  - a. *Answers may vary, e.g. octopus or jellyfish.*

## CHAPTER 20

**VOCABULARY:** shimmering, oblong

- 1) How does Karana keep the gulls from eating all the abalones she has collected?
  - a. *She hangs abalone shells that flash in the sun and keep the birds away.*
- 2) Why does Karana go to Tall Rock?
  - a. *She goes to hunt cormorants so she can use their feathers to make a skirt.*
- 3) What clues does Karana have that the approaching ship is an Aleut ship?
  - a. *It is coming from the same direction as before and has red sails.*
- 4) How do Karana and Rontu escape the Aleuts?
  - a. *They hide in the cave where Karana has placed supplies.*

## CHAPTER 21

**VOCABULARY:** glossier, giddy

- 1) Why does Karana not let Rontu out of the cave?
  - a. *She does not want him to go the Aleuts.*
- 2) What does Karana do during the days she is hiding in the cave?
  - a. *She works on her skirt of cormorant skins/feathers.*
- 3) What is the name of the Aleut girl?
  - a. *Tutok*
- 4) How does Karana know that someone has been to the cave?
  - a. *A necklace with black stones was left near the opening.*

## CHAPTER 22

**VOCABULARY:** gesture, circlet, deserted

- 1) What words do Karana and Tutok teach each other when they first meet?
  - a. *"Wintscha" and "win-tai" – the words for pretty*
- 2) What gift does Karana make for Tutok?
  - a. *She makes a circlet of shells for her hair*
- 3) How do you think Karana feels when she realizes the Aleuts, and Tutok, have left the island? Why?
  - a. *Lonely and sad (answers may vary) – because she is alone again.*

## CHAPTER 23

**VOCABULARY:** reproachfully, harmed

- 1) How does Karana help the wounded otter?
  - a. *She cuts him out of the kelp, brings him to a safe tide pool, and feeds him fresh fish.*
- 2) What name does she give the otter? Why?
  - a. *Mon-a-nee, because it means "Little boy with large eyes."*
- 3) How does Karana spend the winter?
  - a. *Making weapons and some earrings to match her necklace from Tutok.*

## CHAPTER 24

**VOCABULARY:** fledglings, tame, hobbled

- 1) Karana is happy with all her animal friends. However, what memories keep her from being completely happy?
  - a. *Remembering Tutok and her sister, Ulape.*
- 2) Why does Karana continue to gather abalones that summer?
  - a. *She wants to have a supply in case the Aleuts return.*
- 3) What new name does Karana give the otter? Why?
  - a. *Won-a-nee, because it means "Girl with Large Eyes" and because the otter now has baby otters with her.*

## CHAPTER 25

**VOCABULARY:** quiver, dawn

- 1) What weapons does Karana make that winter? Why?
  - a. *A spear, a bow, and a quiver of arrows; so she would be ready to live in another area of the island if the Aleuts return.*
- 2) Why does Karana stop making the marks she has been using to keep track of how much time has passed?
  - a. *It has been so long and does not matter anymore.*
- 3) Why does Rontu go to his old lair?
  - a. *He goes to his old lair to die.*
- 4) How do you think Karana feels after Rontu dies?
  - a. *She feels alone.*

## CHAPTER 26

**VOCABULARY:** snares, frisked, thong

- 1) Why does Karana make the traps?
  - a. *To trap the wild dog she believes is Rontu's son.*
- 2) What clues does she have that the dog is Rontu's son?
  - a. *He is larger than the other dogs, has heavier fur, and yellow eyes. He also runs like Rontu.*
- 3) What does she name the dog? What does it mean?
  - a. *Rontu-Aru, which means Son of Rontu.*
- 4) How is Karana feeling at the end of the chapter?
  - a. *She is sad or lonely, even though she has Rontu-Aru, because she often thinks of Ulape and Tutok.*



## CHAPTER 27

**VOCABULARY:** fierce, rumbling, crest, vanquished

- 1) What awakens Karana when she is napping on the beach?
  - a. *A rumbling like thunder.*
- 2) What is the author describing when he writes, "There was a faint sound as if some giant animal were sucking the air in and in through its teeth"?
  - a. *The large waves; tsunami*
- 3) How does Karana escape the giant waves?
  - a. *By climbing up the cliff.*
- 4) What is happening when Karana and Rontu-Aru are knocked to the ground?
  - a. *An earthquake*

## CHAPTER 28

**VOCABULARY:** wreckage, mist

- 1) What is Karana doing when she spots the approaching ship?
  - a. *She is making a new canoe.*
- 2) How do you think she feels? Why?
  - a. *She feels scared, yet hopeful because she does not know why it has come to the island.*
- 3) Why does she not leave the island with this ship?
  - a. *The men sail away without seeing her.*

## CHAPTER 29

**VOCABULARY:** foamy

- 1) What does Karana do when she sees the ship approaching two years later?
  - a. *She bathes, gets dressed, and waits for them to come find her.*
- 2) What do the men make for her to wear?
  - a. *A dress made out of two pairs of trousers.*
- 3) Before they leave, what do the men want Karana to tell them? Why doesn't she?
  - a. *The men want to know where they can hunt otters. She doesn't tell them because they are her friends and she does not want them killed.*
- 4) How do you think she feels as they set sail?
  - a. *Answers will vary – nervous, looking forward to seeing her people again, happy, etc.*

# Joyful Noise

## **"GRASSHOPPERS"**

**VOCABULARY:** vaulting, soar

- 1) What time of year does this poem take place?
  - a. *Sometime in the Spring.*
- 2) What words or lines of the poem help you to see this?
  - a. *"Ground's warming", "into spring".*
- 3) The author uses many words that are synonyms with "jumping". What different words does he use?
  - a. *Hopping, vaulting, leap, bound, spring, soar, leapfrog*
- 4) Think about what the poem would have sounded like if the author would only have used "jump" instead of all of those other words. Why does using those other words make the poem better?
  - a. *By using the other words, the poem is more interesting because it is more descriptive.*

## **"WATER STRIDERS"**

**VOCABULARY:** cinch, balderdash, rubbish, mindful, prudent

- 1) What is the attitude of the water striders toward their own ability to walk on water?
  - a. *They think it's very easy.*
- 2) What is the attitude of the water striders toward others not being able to walk on water?
  - a. *They don't seem to understand and are not compassionate about how this might be hard for others.*
- 3) Remember, repetition is when the author repeats a word or a phrase throughout the poem or throughout a part of the poem. What phrase does the author repeat in this poem?
  - a. *"Whenever we're asked."*

## **"MAYFLIES"**

**VOCABULARY:** trifling, emerging, frenzied, squander

- 1) One of the comparisons in this poem is between the Mayflies and redwood trees. Aside from their lifespan, in what other ways are they different?
  - a. *One's a tree and the other is an insect, one is really big and the other is really small.*
- 2) Why do you think the author compared the Mayfly to something so different?
  - a. *By using an example that is very different, it's easier for the reader to highlight how small the Mayfly is and how quickly their life goes by.*
- 3) Make a comparison from people to something else in a similar way to how the author compares the Mayfly and the redwood tree.
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

## **"FIREFLIES"**

**VOCABULARY:** parchment, calligraphers, penmanship, fleeting

- 1) Find at least three separate examples of alliteration in this poem and copy them here.
  - a. *Examples could include: "fireflies flicking", "flitting flashing", "gleaming glowing", "six-legged scribblers", etc.*
- 2) What time of year does this take place? Why is that important to the poem?

- a. *It takes place in June. It's important to the poem because fireflies only come out when it's warm out.*
- 3) The author refers to the fireflies as "six-legged scribblers / of vanishing messages". What does he mean by this? What are they scribbling?
  - a. *When the fireflies move in the dark, their light leaves a trail behind them. This trail can sometimes look like a scribble.*

### **"BOOK LICE"**

**VOCABULARY:** thriller, lodged, adoring

- 1) There are several examples of rhyme in this poem. Find at least three different examples and copy them here.
  - a. *Examples could include, "Schiller / Thriller", "50 / Christie", "eat / meet", etc.*
- 2) What does the relationship about these two book lice show us about people with different personalities and interests?
  - a. *It shows us that sometimes opposites attract.*
- 3) Have you seen this happen in real life? Do you have a friend who is the opposite of you or do you know of friends who are like this? Describe them.
  - a. *Answers will vary.*

### **"THE MOTH'S SERENADE"**

**VOCABULARY:** plight, trice, merge

- 1) Remember, a simile is when you compare two or more unlike things using the words "like" or "as". There is a simile near the beginning of this poem. Copy it here and explain what two unlike things are being compared.
  - a. *The simile is "I drink your light / like nectar". The two things being compared are the way the moth is consuming the light and an insect's consumption of nectar.*
- 2) Remember, a metaphor is when you compare two or more unlike things without using the words "like" or "as". There are two metaphors in the middle of this poem. Copy one of them here and explain what two unlike things are being compared.
  - a. *The first metaphor is "Porch light! / My shining star!". In this metaphor, the brightness of the porch light is being compared to the brightness of a star. The second metaphor is "Porch light! / My compass needle's North!". In this metaphor, the porch light is being compared to the North of a compass. On a compass, the needle is always pointing to the North in the same way the moth is always facing and being drawn to the porch light.*

### **"WATER BOATMEN"**

**VOCABULARY:** cocksawin (coxswain), oarsmen

- 1) What word or phrase is repeated throughout this poem?
  - a. *"Stroke!"*
- 2) Why does the author use that word? Why would he need it to be repeated so often?
  - a. *He uses the word "stroke" because it's what the coxswain shouts to the rowers on a crew team. It helps them keep the time and moving all together. The movements of the water boatmen are similar.*

### **"THE DIGGER WASP"**

**VOCABULARY:** gaze, behold, interference, discern, perseverance, formidable, replica

- 1) This poem is very sad. What are some of the words that show you the sadness of the digger wasp?
  - a. *Some examples could include: "never see", "never gaze", and "I'll have died".*
- 2) The mother digger wasp will never see her children and they will never see her, yet she works hard and endures much in order to care for them. In the Bible, who worked hard and cared for us, even though He never met us? How is this person similar to the digger wasp in the poem?
  - a. *Jesus is similar to the digger wasp. He's similar because he suffered and died for us that we might live. Similarly, the mother digger wasp will never meet her children, but everything she does is to help them.*

### **"CICADAS"**

**VOCABULARY:** kiln

- 1) There are several metaphors in this poem, especially at the beginning. Copy at least two of them here and explain what two things are being compared.
  - a. *Examples could include: "air kiln-hot, lead heavy" – the two things being compared are the temperature and feel of the air and the hotness of a kiln and the heaviness of lead, "the mighty choir's assembling" – the two things being compared are the sound of the cicadas and the sound of a choir.*
- 2) Many times, the poet uses images of a choir to describe the sound of the cicadas. Identify the words he uses to show this comparison.
  - a. *Answers could include: "mighty choir", "singing / jubilant", "pouring out their / fervent praise", "their hymn / sung to the sun", and "chanting from the treetops".*

### **"HONEYBEES"**

**VOCABULARY:** attendants, lauded

- 1) The queen bee and the worker bee have very different ideas about whether or not being a bee is a good life. Why does the queen bee think life as a bee is good?
  - a. *She gets taken care, life is relatively easy, and she doesn't have to do any work.*
- 2) Why does the worker bee think being a bee isn't a good life?
  - a. *The worker bee has to do all of the work by taking care of the larva, getting pollen, and fixing the hive.*
- 3) This poem has some excellent examples of rhyme! Copy at least three of them here.
  - a. *Examples could include: "pain/explain", "attendants/entrance", "wax/relax", "detail/pale".*

### **"WHIRLIGIG BEETLES"**

**VOCABULARY:** revolving, gyrating, serpentine

- 1) The author uses many different words to describe the circular movements of the beetle. Copy at least five of them here.
  - a. *Answers could include spinning, swerving, whirling, weaving, wheeling, swirling, etc.*
- 2) Why do you think the author chose to use all of these different words? Why not use repetition and repeat the same words?
  - a. *By choosing different words, it not only makes the poem more exciting, but it also makes it more vivid for the reader.*

- 3) There's a metaphor in the beginning of the poem. Copy it here and explain what two unlike things are being compared.
  - a. *"We're spinning and swerving / as if we were on a / mad merry-go-round." The movement of the beetles is being compared to the spinning of a merry-go-round.*

#### **"REQUIEM"**

**VOCABULARY:** requiem, darter

- 1) What time of year does this poem take place? Why is it important to the poem?
  - a. *It takes place sometime in the autumn with the first deep frost. It's important to the poem so we can understand why so many of the insects are dead.*

#### **"HOUSE CRICKETS"**

**VOCABULARY:** scarcely, reliable, steadfast, pilot light

- 1) Why are these crickets not affected by the passing of the seasons in the same way as the insects in the previous poem?
  - a. *They aren't affected by the seasons because they stay near the warm stove.*
- 2) How do the crickets measure the passing of the seasons? What things do they associate with each season?
  - a. *They measure the passing of the seasons by the types of food they find on the floor. In the spring there are greens, in the summer there are pie crumbs, in the fall there are pumpkin seeds, and in the winter there is hot chocolate.*
- 3) What word do we see repeated throughout this poem?
  - a. *Crick-et.*
- 4) Why does the author repeat this word? What sound is it meant to mimic?
  - a. *The author repeats the sound because he wants to reader to hear the sound that crickets make.*

#### **"CHRYSALIS DIARY"**

**VOCABULARY:** shed, cease, empire, cataclysm, immeasurably, astounding, chronicle, import, miser, ragrant

- 1) One of the things the caterpillar finds "astounding" is the falling of snow and the way it covers all of the world. Can you remember the first time you saw snow? What was it like? If you can't remember or haven't seen snow, tell of a time when you found something in nature to be completely astounding.
  - a. *Answers will vary.*
- 2) When does this story take place? Why is this important to understanding the poem?
  - a. *The story takes place from November to March. It's important to the story because the passing of time shows us how long it takes for the caterpillar to change into a butterfly.*
- 3) We never see the caterpillar become a butterfly, but he does hint at it. What clue does the author give us in the poem about the butterfly's fate?
  - a. *The last lines of the poem are "And now I recall / that last night / I dreamt of flying". This shows us that the caterpillar is turning into a butterfly without actually using the word "butterfly".*

# Kidnapped

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** manse, kirkyard, rowen

- 1) Why was David Balfour leaving his home?  
*a. His father had died.*
- 2) Where did his father want him to go?  
*a. To the House of Shaws.*
- 3) What three gifts did the minister give David?  
*a. A shilling, a Bible, and the recipe for making Lilly of the Valley water, a "cure-all."*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** firth, parish, grenadier, pith, blunderbush

- 1) What kind of reaction did David get every time he inquired about the House of Shaws?  
*a. People wanted to know why he wanted to know about the place and recommended that he not go there.*
- 2) In what ways was Jennet Clouster like a witch?  
*a. She curses the House of Shaws and all who are involved with it; she speaks cryptically; she has the appearance of a hag.*
- 3) What would you have done in David's place after having met Jennett Clouster?  
*a. Answers will vary*
- 4) What would you have done in David's place after the greeting he received at the House of Shaws?  
*a. Answers will vary*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** parritch

- 1) In what ways does the House of Shaws reflect Ebenezer?  
*a. Both are unfinished, dark, and foreboding.*
- 2) Does Ebenezer Balfour appear to be a trustworthy man? Why or why not?  
*a. No. He seems to be hiding things from his nephew. He wants Dave to have no contact with anyone else.*
- 3) Based solely on what we know of the Balfour brothers so far, compare and contrast their characters.  
*a. Alexander loved the light, had a wife and son, and was generous, pleasant, friendly, and trustworthy. Ebenezer was miserly, reclusive, secretive, and not trustworthy.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** railery, aqua vitae

- 1) What simile did the narrator use to describe how he and Ebenezer kept watching each other?  
*a. Like a cat and mouse.*
- 2) How was this literary device more effective at describing the scene than a long action-by-action account?  
*a. Most people have seen the image of a cat playing with a mouse, so it is very effective to use that image to describe not only the scene, but to allude to the awaiting dangers for David.*
- 3) How did Ebenezer try to murder his nephew?  
*a. By sending him to a dangerous, unfinished part of the house in the dark.*

- 4) Why do you think Ebenezer was trying to murder his nephew?
  - a. *He knew David was the rightful owner of the House of Shaws and Ebenezer would lose the Lordship and all he had.*
- 5) Why was the inscription David found in the book so significant?
  - a. *It meant that his father was the real Lord of Shaws, and that he, David, would now be the real Lord of Shaws. Students may not be able to glean this from the text. Here is some background information you may wish to share with your student:*  
<http://dictionary.law.com>  
**primogeniture**-n. *from Latin for "first born," the ancient rule from feudal England (except in the County of Kent) that the oldest son would inherit the entire estate of his parents (or nearest ancestor), and, if there was no male heir, the daughters would take (receive the property) in equal shares. The intent was to preserve larger properties from being broken up into small holdings, which might weaken the power of nobles.*  
[http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British\\_monarchy#Succession](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_monarchy#Succession)

## CHAPTER 5

VOCABULARY: enmity, consummation, tribulations, articulate, unscrupulous, trepanned

- 1) What danger signals did Dave receive but ignore?
  - a. *His uncle had been devious and untrustworthy. Then the cabin boy tells all about how much abuse happens aboard the ship and how they had transported prisoners and kidnapped people.*

## CHAPTER 6

- 1) David had told his uncle he would never consent to going aboard the Covenant. Why do you think he did it?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 2) What do you think the papers were all about?
  - a. *Servitude papers for David.*
- 3) How could a government put an end to this practice?
  - a. *By outlawing it.*

## CHAPTER 7

- 1) Why was David allowed to leave the brig?
  - a. *He was perhaps dying and Mr. Riach wanted to take better care of him.*
- 2) Why was David sorry for Ransome?
  - a. *The boy had no real childhood, people used him cruelly, and he had no concept of reality.*
- 3) What was the one kindness the captain showed?
  - a. *He shot a gun and showed the ship's colors as he went by his mother's house.*

## CHAPTER 8

VOCABULARY: scuttle, forecastle, dram, pannikan

- 1) Why did Mr. Shaun kill Ransome?
  - a. *Because he brought him a dirty pannikan.*
- 2) Was Ransome's crime deserving of the punishment of death?
  - a. *No*
- 3) If you were Mr. Shaun, what would you have done to Ransome for his crime?
  - a. *Answers will vary*

- 4) The captain of a ship is in a position of authority, but also of responsibility. Did this captain act responsibly toward Ransome before Ransome was murdered? Why or why not?
  - a. *No, because he left an abusive man with authority over the young boy.*
- 5) Did Captain Hoseason act responsibly toward Ransome after Ransome was murdered? Why or Why not?
  - a. *No, because he did not carry out any kind of justice to the murderer. He simply made a cover-up story.*
- 6) Was there anything at all that David could have done to have prevented Ransome's death?
  - a. *No*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** Jacobite, breakers, swell, aperture

- 1) Which of the following would you have chosen to do if you were David: Aid in Alan Breck's murder or join Alan Breck against the entire crew? Why?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 2) What do you think the obligations of the Brig's captain should have been if he sunk a smaller vessel?
  - a. *Answers will vary*

## CHAPTER 10 VOCABULARY: dirk

- 1) Were Alan Breck and David Balfour in their rights to defend themselves? Defend your answer.
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 2) How did the sailors attack the second time?
  - a. *Some came in through the skylight while others tried to batter down the door to take Alan Breck head on.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** Charlemagne, countenance, parley, gill

- 1) Why did the captain call for a truce?
  - a. *So many of his men were dead and others would no longer fight.*
- 2) What did Mr. Riach and the captain want from David and Alan more than anything?
  - a. *Alcohol*
- 3) Was Mr. Breck a reasonable man or was he after more blood and revenge?
  - a. *He was a reasonable man.*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** bairns, propensity

- 1) Why does Alan Breck hate all Campbells?
  - a) *Campbells were sent by King George to take away Ardshiel's property and political power.*
- 2) Why did people pay two rents?
  - a) *They paid the first rent because they were required to pay King George's man. They paid the second because of loyalty to their clan.*

## CHAPTER 13

- 1) How many men were working the brig as they passed by the Torran Rocks?
  - a. *There were 5, not counting Alan and David.*



- 2) What happened to David?
  - a. *He was thrown overboard.*
- 3) Whose lands is he in now?
  - a. *The land of the Campbells.*
- 4) Do you think he is better off or worse off now than when he was a prisoner aboard the ship? Why?
  - a. *Answers will vary*

#### CHAPTER 14

VOCABULARY: lamentable, peaty, hags, sop, bog, coble, supplication, prodigious, yard

- 1) Why did David cry each of the two times he did?
  - a. *He could not reach the yard when he needed it to cross the stream, and men in a boat passed him, saw him in his plight, and laughed at him rather than help him.*
- 2) What caused David to be sick?
  - a. *Some of the shellfish he had been eating.*
- 3) Why were the fishermen laughing at David?
  - a. *When the tide went out, he could easily walk to the mainland and would not have to be stranded on the isle.*
- 4) What happened to David's money?
  - a. *Of what he had left after the sailors stole a third of it, most of it fell out of his pocket.*
- 5) What language did the fisherman speak?
  - a. *Gaelic*

#### CHAPTER 15

VOCABULARY: kine, tartan, rapine, louting, snuff, screed, lampoon, elegiac

- 1) Who is the lad with the silver button?
  - a. *David*
- 2) What happened to the rest of the sailors and Alan Breck?
  - a. *They all made it to shore safely.*
- 3) How did the first man treat David?
  - a. *Very well.*
- 4) How did the second man treat David?
  - a. *He tried to cheat him.*
- 5) What did David find out later about his blind, third guide?
  - a. *That he was a robber and possibly a murderer.*

#### CHAPTER 16

VOCABULARY: kirk, Exchequer, soger, privation

- 1) What was the inn of Lochaline like?
  - a. *Beggarly and vile*
- 2) Compare/contrast Mr. Henderson with Mr. Mackeigh.
  - a. *Mr. Henderson was a true Christian who loved God. He was warm, mannerly, and humble.*  
*Mr. Mackeigh used his position as a "catechist" as a way of throwing people off their guard so he could rob them.*
- 3) What did Mr. Henderson rush into his house to do?
  - a. *Take snuff.*

## CHAPTER 17

VOCABULARY: howes, imperious, Argyle, portmanteau

- 1) Why was David accused of being an accomplice to murder?
  - a. *Because he had stopped "The Red Fox" to ask directions, and someone else had shot The Red Fox.*
- 2) How many men were in the Red Fox's advance party?
  - a. *4*
- 3) Who helped David escape being shot by the red coats?
  - a. *Alan Breck*

## CHAPTER 18

VOCABULARY: moorcock, impotent, breeks

- 1) Why didn't David and Alan go their separate ways?
  - a. *Alan convinced David that the Campbells would not give him justice, that they would hang him for the death of the Red Fox.*
- 2) Did Alan kill the Red Fox?
  - a. *No*
- 3) What happened when the men reached the land when the ship was sinking?
  - a. *They all set upon Alan.*
- 4) Who helped Alan when he had no one to help him?
  - a. *Mr. Riach*

## CHAPTER 19

VOCABULARY: brae, steading, mattock, paper, unco, dragoons

- 1) What is going on when Alan and David reach James' house?
  - a. *Everyone is panicking, hiding things, and burning things.*
- 2) How did Alan let everyone know he was a friend?
  - a. *Alan whistled three times in a special way.*
- 3) Why does James beat his son?
  - a. *His son was burning too many important papers.*
- 4) Of what is James most afraid?
  - a. *Being hanged.*
- 5) Why was James' wife so thankful to David?
  - a. *He agreed to let them paper him.*

## CHAPTER 20

VOCABULARY: consternation, itinerary, mortification, gomerl, confluence, burn, tediousness, rheumatism, sultriness, drammach, intricate

- 1) Why did Alan stop at every house, though they were running for their lives?
  - a. *To warn all the people that the Red Fox had been killed and the redcoats would be coming.*
- 2) What did Alan say just before he leaped across the raging river?
  - a. *"Hang or drown"*
- 3) What was David doing when Alan clapped his hand over David's mouth?
  - a. *Snoring*
- 4) Why did Alan want to quiet David?
  - a. *They were being surrounded by redcoats.*

- 5) What did they eat?
  - a. *Oats mixed with cold water.*

## CHAPTER 21

VOCABULARY: whaups, guddling, , siller, contrivance, talisman, complicity, chattels

- 1) How did Alan get a messenger in the middle of nowhere, surrounded by enemies?
  - a. *He carved a cross on a piece of wood, and tied his button and two twigs to it. He placed it where his friend could find it, then led the many by whistles to their location.*
- 2) What happened to Alan's button?
  - a. *John Breck Maccoll tried to keep it.*
- 3) What did David want to do?
  - a. *He wanted to part ways with Alan.*

## CHAPTER 22

VOCABULARY: possets, gloaming, incessant, gossamer, gillies, labyrinth

- 1) What happened during David's watch while they were fleeing through the desert?
  - a. *David fell asleep and the redcoats were almost upon them.*
- 2) What did Alan say when David said he was too tired to go on?
  - a. *Alan said he would carry David.*
- 3) Who captured David and Alan?
  - a. *Cluny MacPhearson's men.*

## CHAPTER 23

VOCABULARY: wattled, brawly, sequestered, eschew, infusion, covenanting

- 1) What was Cluny's Cage?
  - a. *It was Cluny's home/hideout on the side of the mountain of Ben Alder.*
- 2) How did Cluny's men treat him?
  - a. *Like a king/chief.*
- 3) How did Alan lose all of his and David's money?
  - a. *By losing at cards with Cluny.*
- 4) When they had to leave, how did David obtain the money they needed?
  - a. *By speaking with Cluny and asking what he would advise his own son to do.*

## CHAPTER 24

- 1) What was David slow at?
  - a. *Getting angry.*
- 2) What was he slower at?
  - a. *Forgiving once he was angry.*
- 3) How did David end the possible sword fight?
  - a. *He told Alan he was dying.*

## CHAPTER 25

- 1) What family lives in the first house where Alan knocks?
  - a. *Maclaren's*
- 2) Who knew that David was there in the house?
  - a. *Everyone*
- 3) Who turned David into the authorities?

- a. *No one*
- 4) How was the dispute settled between Alan and Robin Oig?
  - a. *They dueled with the bagpipes.*
- 5) Who won?
  - a. *Robin*
- 6) What happened to Robin later?
  - a. *He was hanged.*

#### CHAPTER 26

VOCABULARY: pinnacles, parapet, clachan, clappermaclaw, dudgeon, gibbet, malefactors, allege

- 1) How did David and Alan get a boat to cross the sea?
  - a. *They tricked a young woman by David feigning he was very sick once again.*
- 2) What was the one thing that worried David and Alan while they hid in the thin woods while awaiting the boat?
  - a. *A drunken man hung out with them asking questions.*
- 3) What did both David and Alan think of the "pretty lass"?
  - a. *That she had fine character.*

#### CHAPTER 27

VOCABULARY: burgh, despondency, contentions, consequential, procurement, accoutrement, hiatus, pedantic, geniality, apposite, prolocutions, obnoxious, indubitably

- 1) What makes David nervous as he goes in search of Mr. Rankeillor?
  - a. *He does not look like a gentleman. He is ragged and dirty and has not a single paper.*
- 2) When he finally plucks up the courage to ask someone where he might find Mr. Rankeillor, what does the gentleman say?
  - a. *He says that he is Mr. Rankeillor and they are both in front of his house.*
- 3) Does David trust Mr. Rankeillor?
  - a. *No, not until he reveals all that has happened while David has been gone.*
- 4) Who came to Mr. Rankeillor while David was gone in search of him?
  - a. *Mr. Campbell, the minister.*

#### CHAPTER 28

VOCABULARY: petulance, entail, farcical, anecdote

- 1) Why did David's father and Ebenezer quarrel with one another?
  - a. *They both loved the same girl.*
- 2) What did David's father do to settle the quarrel?
  - a. *He gave up his title, lands, and money and married the girl.*
- 3) What does Mr. Rankeillor call Alan Breck?
  - a. *Mr. Thompson*
- 4) Does Alan agree to Mr. Rankeillor's plan?
  - a. *Yes*

#### CHAPTER 29

VOCABULARY: inclination, scrupulous, drollery, intrusions

- 1) Where did Alan meet with Ebenezer?
  - a. *On the front porch of the House of Shaws.*
- 2) What did Alan pretend to be?
  - a. *A partner with Captain Hosean.*

- 3) Where did Alan say David was?
  - a. *A prisoner in a castle of one of his family members.*
- 4) What did Ebenezer finally admit?
  - a. *That he had the Captain kidnap David for 20 pounds.*
- 5) What was the final agreement made between Mr. Rankeillor and Ebenezer?
  - a. *Ebenezer would hold the house and the lands while David would get a clear 2/3 of all the income.*

## CHAPTER 30

**VOCABULARY:** animosity, prodigal

- 1) Why did Mr. Rankeillor say David should not interfere with Jame's trials?
  - a. *The D. of A. (Duke of Argyle) felt animosity in this case. The D. of A. was an excellent nobleman but, timeo qui nocere deos. If David interfered with the case, he might turn against David and would be tried for murder in a Highland court.*
- 2) What happens to Alan Breck?
  - a. *David helps him to get to France.*

# Kon-Tiki

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** isolated, Polynesian, civilizations, descended

- 1) Who is the narrator of *Kon-Tiki*?
  - a. *The author, Thor Heyerdahl.*
- 2) Where are the men when the book begins?
  - a. *On a raft in the middle of the Pacific Ocean.*
- 3) What are the names of the six men on the raft?
  - a. *Thor, Herman, Bengt, Knut, Erik, and Torstein.*
- 4) Who was "Tiki"?
  - a. *According to legend, he was both chief and god from a land far in the east.*
- 5) How does Thor first learn about him?
  - a. *From a story an old man tells him when Thor is on one of the Polynesian islands.*
- 6) How does Thor think people came to the Polynesian Islands so long ago?
  - a. *That they sailed across the ocean on rafts carried on the currents.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** manuscript, keel, bulwarks, expedition

- 1) Why does Thor have a hard time getting people to read about or believe his theories?
  - a. *People do not think anyone could have made it across the Pacific on a raft.*
- 2) What does his friend Wilhelm tell Thor to try to talk him out of going?
  - a. *That even though the currents and winds are favorable, it is not probable that they would actually make it across the ocean. There would be too many dangers.*
- 3) Who is the first man to want to go with Thor?
  - a. *Herman Watzinger.*
- 4) Why are Knut and Torstein asked to join them on the voyage?
  - a. *For their skills with radio communication.*
- 5) Where are Herman and Thor headed at the end of the chapter?
  - a. *They are headed to South America.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** balsa, precipice, stern, centerboards

- 1) Why are Thor and Herman told it will be impossible to get the balsa wood they need for the raft?
  - a. *It is the rainy season and they will not be able to go into the jungle because the roads are too muddy.*
- 2) How do they get Don Federico's farm?
  - a. *They fly inland and find a driver to take them into the jungle from the other direction.*
- 3) Who is the sixth member of the crew?
  - a. *Bengt Danielsson*
- 4) What place does Thor find for building the raft? Why is this a good location?
  - a. *The naval boatyard. Because the raft will be in a protected area and they will have access to the navel workshops.*
- 5) Why is it important that they built the raft the same way the Inca Indian's did?
  - a. *So that people will be more likely to believe that the Inca's could have also traveled across the Pacific.*

- 6) Give a brief description of the completed raft.
- a. *The raft is made from 9 balsa logs and is about 45 feet long at the longest point. There is small cabin built in the middle. There are oars for steering at the stern. Bamboo is laid as the flooring in some areas and there are two masts.*

#### CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** bow, dinghy, tunnies, plankton, trough, swell

- 1) What problems do they encounter as the trip begins?
  - a. *The tug begins to pull the raft out to sea before all the men are on it. They are almost caught in the undertow from the boat that is pulling them.*
- 2) What are the first days and nights like at sea?
  - a. *Very difficult. They are all learning how to sail the raft, the waves are high, and the sea is rough. They have not yet figured out how to steer the raft very effectively.*
- 3) Why is it important that the raft stays in the Humboldt Current?
  - a. *Because this will take them to the Polynesian Islands. Otherwise, they could be lost at sea if they are caught by a different current.*
- 4) Why are the men worried about the ropes that were used to hold the raft together?
  - a. *They have been told the ropes they used will not last and they should have used wire or chains. However, the ropes rub grooves in the balsa wood; if they had used wire or chains, they would have worn away the logs.*
- 5) What large fish visits the men? What is unique about this fish?
  - a. *A whale shark. They are rare and very large.*

#### CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** sextant, homeland, provisions, shoal

- 1) Describe some of the activities the men typically do during a day at sea.
  - a. *Thor maintains the logbook. Knut and Torstein keep the radio working. Herman takes measurements. Erik maintains the sails, draws, and carves. Bengt reads.*
- 2) Would the voyagers of Kon-Tiki's time have had trouble getting food or fresh water? Why or why not?
  - a. *No. Because they would have always been able to fish. They could collect rainwater for drinking water or squeeze water from the fish.*
- 3) What are the plankton that are collected in the net?
  - a. *Small organisms that are eaten by many fish and animals in the ocean. What do the men do with them? They caught them in a net and ate them – kind of like a soup. Two of the men really liked them, two thought they were quite good, and two didn't want anything to do with them.*
- 4) Why do the men make the dive basket?
  - a. *Because they like to go underwater and study the sea life, and the basket offers them some protection from sharks and other animals.*
- 5) What point have they reached at the end of CHAPTER 5?
  - a. *They are halfway across the ocean – between Peru and the Polynesian Islands.*

#### CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** vagabonds, ambush, voracity, plunged, porous

- 1) What causes the men to laugh at themselves at the beginning of the chapter?
  - a. *They row away from the raft in the dinghy and see their funny raft and what they look like from outside.*

- 2) What danger do the two men face when they rowed out in the dinghy?
  - a. *That they would be separated from the raft and not able to get back.*
- 3) Name two things that showed Thor that the people that had settled the Polynesian Island had come from South America.
  - a. *The large stone sculptures that are very similar across miles of ocean, the names of the island, and the stories the natives tell.*
- 4) Describe what happened when Herman fell overboard.
  - a. *Torstein tries to throw out the life belt but the line becomes tangled. The men drop the sail and two head out in the dinghy to try to reach him. Herman tries to swim towards them as Knut dives off the side with the life belt. He is able to reach Herman. Meanwhile the men in the dinghy have headed back to the raft and the four of them pull Knut and Herman back with the rope tied to the life belt.*
- 5) What are the men worried about after the storms had passed?
  - a. *About the raft still being sturdy. Some of the ropes have broken or are loose.*
- 6) What are they all excited about at the end of the chapter?
  - a. *There are many more birds flying around, indicating they are getting closer to land.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** devoured, maneuvers, reef, coral

- 1) What is the name of the first island the men see?
  - a. *Puka Puka.*
- 2) Are they able to land here? No. Why or why not?
  - a. *The currents were not favorable and they drifted away.*
- 3) Why are they not able to land on Angatau, the next island they come close to?
  - a. *It is surrounded by a reef and they are not able to find a break where they could sail through safely.*
- 4) What danger faces the raft?
  - a. *After they pass Angatua, they are headed toward another large reef. They will not be able to navigate around it and will crash into it.*
- 5) How do the men prepare for the shipwreck?
  - a. *They seal important items in waterproof bags. They secure the boxes tightly to the raft and put important items in the dinghy. They put on their shoes.*
- 6) Give a brief description of what happens as they approach the reef.
  - a. *The raft is tossed around in the waves and the men are pushed and pulled in the water. The logs move and twist. Eventually they jump off the raft, onto the reef, and wade into the island.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** envoy, assemblage, jubilation, jetty

- 1) Why do the men work quickly to get the radio working again?
  - a. *They want to radio their contact and let him know they are safe and not to send out a rescue mission.*
- 2) How do Thor and the other men communicate with the island men that come to meet them?
  - a. *In French, because the chief had gone to school in Tahiti.*
- 3) Why do the men receive such a warm welcome from the natives?
  - a. *Answers may vary. Because visitors are rare. Because their journey proves that the stories of their ancestors could be true.*



- 4) What is the name of the island on which the natives live?
  - a. *Raroia.*
- 5) Why do you think the white men are given Polynesian names?
  - a. *To show that they have been accepted as part of the native people.*
- 6) How are the men rescued from the islands? What happens to *Kon-Tiki*, the raft?
  - a. *A boat is sent from Tahiti to come and get them. It is towed behind to the boat to Tahiti.*

# Lincoln: A Photobiography

## CHAPTERS 1-2

**VOCABULARY:** reticent, ambitious, eloquent, melancholy, abolitionist, emancipation, aptitude

### CHAPTER 1: THE MYSTERIOUS MR. LINCOLN

- 1) Lincoln had a great sense of humor. What did he say about his face?
  - a. When his rival said he was "two-faced", he said, "If I had another face, do you think I'd wear this one?"
- 2) Was Lincoln talkative about himself?
  - a. He spoke very little about himself or his feeling. It was said he was most secretive and reticent.
- 3) What was Lincoln's nick name? Did he like it?
  - a. People called him Abe and he hated it.
- 4) Lincoln has become a legend. What does the legend do to a man?
  - a. "While a legend is based on truth, it is only partly true. And it hides the man behind it like a disguise."
- 5) Lincoln was tormented by what?
  - a. He was tormented by frequent bouts of depression.
- 6) According the Stephan Douglas, what was Lincoln's mission?
  - a. His greatest mission was to accomplish 2 things: save his country from dismemberment and ruin and to free the country from the crime of slavery.

### CHAPTER 2: A BACKWOODS BOY

- 1) How often did Lincoln attend school as a boy?
  - a. He attended only when he could be spared from the chores.
- 2) What kind of education did his parents have?
  - a. His parents had no education, could barely scribble their name.
- 3) When he was 8 years old, what was he old enough to handle?
  - a. He was old enough to handle an ax.
- 4) What were Lincoln's mother's words to her family when she was dying?
  - a. She said be kind and good to Father, to one another and to the world. (She was a very smart person for having no education)
- 5) Lincoln's father hired him out to do what kind of work and for what kind of wage?
  - a. He hired him out to dig wells, build pig pens, split rail fences, fell trees, all for 25¢ per day.
- 6) All of Lincoln's schooling amounted to about how long?
  - a. Only about one year.
- 7) How did he continue to learn?
  - a. He borrowed any books he could find and read the newspaper.
- 8) When and where did Lincoln first see slaves with his own eyes?
  - a. He first saw them at age 18 in the slave markets of New Orleans.
- 9) Lincoln had a debt. How much was it and how long did it take him to pay it off?
  - a. He had a debt for \$1,100 and it took him 15 years to pay it off.
- 10) At what age did Lincoln hold his first elected office?
  - a. Lincoln was 25.
- 11) Who prompted Lincoln to study law?

- a. John Todd Stuart told him to study law if he wanted to get into politics.
- 12) How did one become a lawyer in the 1830's?
  - a. One studied law books and then had to pass the law exams. One did not have to attend school.
- 13) Lincoln studied 3 years on his own and passed his exams to become lawyer in 1837. What was his first job?
  - a. He was offered a job as a junior partner in a law firm.

## CHAPTERS 3-4

**VOCABULARY:** fluent, treaty, country bumpkin, anecdote, shrewd, superstitions, carpetbag, injustice, oppose, nomination, secede

### CHAPTER 3: LAW AND POLITICS

- 1) Describe Mary Ann Todd.
  - a. She was the daughter of a wealthy Kentucky banker. She was vivacious, witty, fluent in French, knew all the latest dances, loved politics and had outspoken views on everything.
- 2) What made Lincoln go into the worse depression of his life?
  - a. He broke off his engagement to Mary, because he was considered unsuitable for her.
- 3) In what year and to what position was Lincoln elected by a large majority?
  - a. In 1846 he was elected to the Congress House of Representatives.
- 4) Where did Lincoln file his letters and papers?
  - a. He kept them in the lining of his hat.
- 5) How did the Lincoln boys behave when their dad took them to his office?
  - a. They were spoiled and not disciplined. They pulled books off of shelves, bent the points on the pens, overturned the spittoon.

### CHAPTER 4: HALF SLAVE AND HALF FREE

- 1) If Congress could keep slavery from spreading, what did Lincoln think would happen?
  - a. He thought it would die a natural death. Just slowly fade away.
- 2) What is the Missouri Compromise?
  - a. The compromise permitted slavery in some western territories and not in others.
- 3) What is the Kansas-Nebraska Act?
  - a. It called for "popular sovereignty" where each territory could decide for themselves whether they wanted to be slave or free. It would overturn the Missouri Compromise.
- 4) What aroused Lincoln on the issue of slavery?
  - a. The Kansas-Nebraska Act got him in politics again, campaigning for antislavery issues.
- 5) Why was the Kansas territory called "Bleeding Kansas"?
  - a. It was a battle ground for slave vs antislavery positions. There were rigged elections, lynchings, burnings, and assassinations as they fought over control.
- 6) Explain the Dred Scott Decision?
  - a. The Supreme Court decided that Dred Scott, a slave, was not a citizen and not entitled to the rights of a citizen. He was personal property of a white owner, whose personal property rights were guaranteed by the constitution, even if they were in a free state.
- 7) Lincoln speaks out against the court decision. What does he say about the court?
  - a. It had often overruled its own decisions and he will do what he can to overrule this.
- 8) Lincoln began politics in the \_\_\_\_\_ party and switched to the \_\_\_\_\_ party because of what reason?

- a. He began as a Whig and became a Republican as they were united in their stand against slavery.
- 9) Lincoln agreed to do what and how many times with Stephan Douglas while running for office?
  - a. Lincoln agreed to have 7, three-hour long public debates.
- 10) What were the nicknames for Lincoln and Douglas? How did they get them?
  - a. Douglas was the Little Giant because he was short, had a large round head and was loud and aggressive in personality. Lincoln was long Abe because he was tall, thin, plain, and quiet in personality.
- 11) What was Douglas' stand on equality for blacks?
  - a. He was opposed to equality for blacks. Thought the government was made by white men for white men.
- 12) What was Lincoln's view of slavery?
  - a. It was a moral issue. The government was to secure the blessings of freedom. Slavery is an unqualified evil to the Negro, to white man, to the soil and to the state.
- 13) It was NOT customary for presidential candidates to do what in the 1860's?
  - a. It was not customary to campaign on your own behalf.
- 14) What advice did Lincoln follow from an 11 year old girl?
  - a. He grew a beard.
- 15) What were the feelings of the southern states when Lincoln was elected president?
  - a. They would never submit to such humiliation and degradation as the inauguration of Lincoln.

## CHAPTERS 5-6

**VOCABULARY:** inauguration, howitzer, compromise, tamper, enlistment, typhoid fever, strategic, pompous, meticulous, peninsula, shackles, garrisons

## CHAPTER 5: EMANCIPATION

- 1) It took 4 months between election and the inauguration of Lincoln as President. What happened in those 4 months?
  - a. In that time 7 southern states seceded from the union.
- 2) What happened at Fort Sumter, South Carolina?
  - a. Supplies were being delivered from the north and southern troops opened fire on them and began the Civil War.
- 3) Who, how, and why did persons arrive at Bull Run on Sunday July 21, 1861?
  - a. Politicians, their wives, newspapermen and other spectators arrive in buggies and carriages with picnics to watch the army do battle.
- 4) What did Lincoln study to help him in the war?
  - a. Lincoln began studying military strategies to help with the war.
- 5) How was the war going in the spring of 1862?
  - a. The north was gaining control but the loss of life "horrified everyone".
- 6) Was McClellan a good general? Why or Why not?
  - a. He was not a good general. He had difficulty making decisions and acting on them.
- 7) Who encouraged Lincoln to abolish slavery?
  - a. His Republican advisors encouraged him.
- 8) When was it advised to order his Emancipation Proclamation?
  - a. When the north had won a great victory in battle is when it should be issued.
- 9) The Emancipation Proclamation essentially said what?
  - a. It said that if the slaves states did not return to the union by January 1863 he would free the slaves everywhere in the Confederacy.

- 10) Did former black slaves fight in the Civil War?
  - a. Yes they did, having their own division and fought for the north, or union.

#### **CHAPTER 6: THIS DREADFUL WAR**

- 1) What were some of the measures Lincoln imposed to keep the north states intact?
  - a. He declared Marshall law, suspended habeas corpus, started a military draft and enlisted blacks into the armed forces.
- 2) What was Lincoln's remark to critics about blacks in the army?
  - a. "You say you will not fight to free Negros. Some of them are willing to fight for you."
- 3) What were the problems Lincoln had with his generals?
  - a. Most of his generals were not good at making decisions, moved slowly in their strategies and did not follow directions from Lincoln.
- 4) What famous speech by Lincoln was delivered at a dedication of a cemetery?
  - a. He delivered his Famous Gettysburg Address.
- 5) What did Lincoln call the sessions he had with people who wanted to talk to him?
  - a. He called them the "public opinion baths".

#### **CHAPTER 7: WHO IS DEAD IN THE WHITE HOUSE?**

**VOCABULARY:** assassination, deserter, bodyguard, derringer, conspiracy, dirge

- 1) In the beginning of the war there was a first issue for fighting that changed to a different issue. What were they?
  - a. The first issue was keeping the union together and it changed into the issue of slavery.
- 2) What is the 13<sup>th</sup> Amendment?
  - a. The 13<sup>th</sup> Amendment changes the U.S. Constitution to say that there will be no more slavery in the U.S.
- 3) Where and when did the surrender of the Confederate Army take place?
  - a. General Lee surrendered to General Ulysses Grant at the Appomattox Courthouse on April 9, 1864.
- 4) Who killed President Lincoln? Why?
  - a. John Wilkes booth killed Lincoln at the Ford theatre. He was from Virginia and thought to be part of a rebel conspiracy.

# The Miracle Worker

## ACT I

**VOCABULARY:** considerate, vitality\*, emits, bleat, congestion, editorial, vivacious, insistent, badgered, impudence\*, exasperating, affliction\*

- 1) What is the conflict in the first act?
  - a. *The conflict is two fold. First the Keller family struggles to teach and discipline Helen fairly. Unfortunately they spoil her and do not teach her manners. They confuse love with compassion and are unable to handle her. Kate, Helen's mother, believes Helen can be taught to speak. The second part of the conflict manifests itself when Annie arrives. The main struggle is between Annie's desire to teach Helen, and Helen's stubborn will.*
- 2) In the beginning of the play, how does Helen try to talk with Martha and Percy?
  - a. *Helen tries to talk with Martha and Percy by putting her finger on their faces and in their mouths and than mimicking their expressions. (p. 9)*
- 3) On page 11, what is Captain Keller's response to Aunt Ev's suggestions?
  - a. *"I've stopped believing in wonders."*
- 4) Who says the following quote: "Blind, Mute - who knows? She is like a little safe, locked, that no one can open. Perhaps there is a treasure inside" (p. 18)
  - a. *Anagnos, the teacher at the Perkins institute.*
- 5) "The only time I have trouble is when I'm right." Who says this? Why is it important?
  - a. *Annie. The quote is important because it exemplifies Annie's strong will and perseverance, which will later serve her well. (p. 18)*
- 6) Can you find the difference between an *institution* and an *institute*? How are these two environments portrayed in the play?
  - a. *Answers may vary. The student will need to define the two words. In the play, an institution is portrayed as a hopeless place full of sickness and suffering. It does not offer solace or a solution. Annie grew up in an institution and wishes to distance herself from it. In comparison, Merriam Webster's Dictionary defines an institute as "an organization for the promotion of a cause: **ASSOCIATION** <a research institute> <an institute for the blind> c: an educational **institution** and especially one devoted to technical fields".*
- 7) Give a few examples of how Helen is spoiled by her parents.
  - a. *On page 24 Kate gives Helen a peppermint drop to calm her  
On page 25 Viney gives Helen a tea-cake to calm her since her mother is gone.  
On Page 26 Keller gives her stick candy.*
- 8) Create an outline of the basic plot of Act I. This outline will be useful for future study and help you to understand the storyline.
  - a. *Answers Vary. EXAMPLE:*
    - *The Kellers find out that Helen is blind and Deaf (pp. 5-7)*
    - *The Kellers struggle with Helen's behavior and are frustrated that they cannot teach or train her. They decide to seek help once again. (pp. 8-16)*
    - *Annie Sullivan is introduced. She is partially blind and has struggled most of her life at the Perkins Institute, where she has been educated. She has been assigned as Helen's teacher and has a strong will, which will cause tension in the play.*
    - *Annie meets the family and Helen. Immediately Helen resists any new change or help from*

- *Annie, to the extent of using violence and trickery. Captain Keller's lack of faith is further diminished by Helen's resistance.*
  - *The scene ends with Annie stating that she has nothing better to do than fight Helen's will.*
  - *The first act has sets up the conflict and main action for the second act.*
- 9) In plays, the actions build into a climax or point of tension which furthers the plot and exhibits the conflict of the story. What is the climax of the first act?
- a. *The climax of the first act is Helen's resistance to the discipline Annie tries to enforce. First she become physically violent by hurting Annie with doll, then she locks Annie in her room. The family's' crumbling confidence in a possible solution is further diminished by this scene. The act ends with a foreshadowing of the conflict to come, as Annie vows not to leave or give up.*

## ACT II

**VOCABULARY:** obedience, impassively\*, pity, tyrant\*, compunction\*, ineffectual\*

- 1) What is a character flaw that Annie and Helen have in common?
  - a. *An unwillingness to obey/a strong or stubborn will, or other similar answers.*
- 2) The physical struggle on pages 58-62 may seem repetitive and futile, but why does Annie continue to try?
  - a. *Because she knows that Helen is capable of and interested in learning.*
- 3) How does Annie convince the Kellers to let her continue working with Helen?
  - a. *She convinces them to let her have two weeks alone with Helen in the garden house so that she has no distractions. She wants Helen to become dependent on her for everything.*
- 4) What quality of Helen's is Annie depending on in order to succeed?
  - a. *Her desire to learn.*

## ACT III

**VOCABULARY:** interminable\*, undisciplined\*, inarticulate\*

- 1) What is the analogy that Annie uses for Helen at the beginning of Act III?
  - a. *A chick hatching from its shell.*
- 2) In the discussion between Keller and James on page 92 Keller says the following: "You'll learn, we don't just keep our children safe. They keep us safe." Discuss this quote and list several reasons Keller would say this. Why do you think this is an important quote?
  - a. *Answers may vary, however a few points to look for are:*
    1. *The quote refers to the earlier reference of losing a "protector." Children keep parents in check and in the future will provide safety when the parents have aged.*
    2. *The quote points to the suffering that parents endure because of their children. This suffering is not necessarily negative; it can serve to strengthen the parent and child bond.*
- 3) Who said the following quote: "I'm sorry. Open my mouth, like that fairy tale, frogs jump out" and what is it in reference to? (p. 93)
  - a. *James is apologizing for his rude remarks to Kate, which have caused discord in the family.*
- 4) Why does Annie say the following: "Yes, what's it to me? They're satisfied. Give them back their child and dog, both house broken, everyone's satisfied. But me, and you." Page 101.
  - a. *Answers will vary; important points to look for:*  
*Annie has nothing to lose by simply handing Helen back to her family, without giving her the proper training or knowledge she needs. However, Annie knows that neither*

*Helen nor she will be satisfied. Helen will continue to be unhappy in a world of silent darkness, and Annie will feel that she has not truly performed her duty toward Helen. In addition, if Annie leaves now she will not find peace with the dreams she has of her brother.*

- 5) During the family prayer at dinner, James uses the bible verse of Jacob wrestling with the angel. How does this verse compare to the storyline of the play?
  - a. *Answers will vary, and should include the following insights:*
    1. *He calls Annie an angel, as if to say she is the angel wrestling Jacob. In other words, Annie is the angel physically struggling with Helen, represented by Jacob.*
    2. *Annie's constant struggle with the Keller family and how they treat Helen can be likened to this biblical scene as well.*
- 6) What finally makes Helen understand language?
  - a. *The water from the pump.*



# Mrs. Frisby and the Rats of NIMH

## CHAPTER 1

- 1) Who is Mrs. Frisby?
  - a. *Mrs. Frisby is the main character of the book. She is a mother and the main provider of food since her husband, Mr. Frisby has died.*
- 2) How many children does she have?
  - a. *Four*
- 3) What are their names?
  - a. *Teresa, Martin, Timothy and Cynthia*
- 4) What has happened to Timothy?
  - a. *Timothy has become very ill.*

## CHAPTER 2

- 1) Who is Mr. Ages?
  - a. *Mr. Ages is a white mouse who lives on the farm and knows how to cure many illnesses.*
- 2) How does Mrs. Frisby know Mr. Ages?
  - a. *Through her husband, Jonathan. Mr. Ages helped Timothy before when he was bitten by a spider.*
- 3) Why is it important that Timothy stay away from the cold?
  - a. *He is very sick and may die if he breathes cold air.*

## CHAPTER 3

- 1) How does Mrs. Frisby meet Jeremy?
  - a. *She untangles him from a fence and saves him from being attacked by Dragon the cat.*

## CHAPTER 4

- 1) Why is moving day important?
  - a. *Answers may vary. There are two main reasons, first the mice must move because the field must be plowed. Second, the field gives the mice food in the fall. However, this year they will not be able to move early because of Timothy's sickness.*
- 2) When does Mr. Fitzgibbons plow his field?
  - a. *The shrew tells Mrs. Frisby that he plows when the frost is gone.*
- 3) What is the quote that Mrs. Frisby's husband would use?
  - a. *"All doors are hard to unlock until you have a key"*

## CHAPTER 5

- 1) How many days do the Frisby's have to move?
  - a. *Five Days*
- 2) After listening to the Farmer, what odd sight does Mrs. Frisby notice?
  - a. *There are rats carrying a large electric cable to their home in the rose bush.*

## CHAPTER 6

- 1) What does Jeremy suggest Mrs. Frisby do?
  - a. *Go to the Owl.*

## CHAPTER 7

- 1) Why is Mrs. Frisby afraid to see the Owl?

a. *Because owls are notorious for eating her kind*

#### CHAPTER 8

- 1) Why does the owl decide to listen to Mrs. Frisby's case?
  - a. *He knew who Jonathan Frisby was.*
- 2) What advice does the owl give to Mrs. Frisby?
  - a. *Go to the rats for help. To ask for Justin and Nicodemus and to tell them to move the cinder block to the "lee of the stone".*

#### CHAPTER 10

- 1) Who does Mrs. Frisby meet at the rosebush?
  - a. *First she meets Brutus, then Mr. Ages, then Justin.*
- 2) How Does Mrs. Frisby get inside the rosebush?
  - a. *She meets Mr. Ages as she is leaving the rosebush. He tells her not to give up hope and introduces her to Brutus, the guard.*

#### CHAPTER 11

- 1) What does the cave that the rats live in look like? *Answers may vary.*
  - a. *The cave is large and lit with Christmas lights. There is an elevator. The rat's home is very elaborate including a main hall and library.*

#### CHAPTER 12

- 1) Who is Isabella?
  - a. *Isabella is a young girl rat who has come to the library to study her reading.*
- 2) Where does Isabella say the rats come from?
  - a. *She hesitantly replies that the rats come from NIMH.*

#### CHAPTER 13

- 1) How have the rats planned to help Mrs. Frisby?
  - a. *Answers may vary. Arthur the engineer plans to move her home using pulleys. Mrs. Frisby agrees to drug Dragon so that they may work in safety.*
- 2) How did Mr. Ages break his leg?
  - a. *When he was sent to drug Dragon the cat's food, so that the rats may work in safety.*
- 3) How did Jonathan Frisby die?
  - a. *While he was drugging Dragon for the rats.*
- 4) What does Nicodemus explain as the "lee of the stone"?
  - a. *Nicodemus explains that the lee is the sheltered side.*
- 5) Who will have to drug Dragon this time?
  - a. *Mrs. Frisby*

#### CHAPTER 14

- 1) Where did Nicodemus live before the rosebush?
  - a. *In a market place with his family.*
- 2) Who was his best friend?
  - a. *Jenner*
- 3) How were Nicodemus and Jenner captured?
  - a. *They were lured to the town square by food and caught with nets.*

## CHAPTER 15

- 1) Where did they take the rats?
  - a. *They took the rats to a laboratory.*
- 2) What was the name of the man in the white coat?
  - a. *Dr. Schultz*
- 3) What happened after they arrived at the lab?
  - a. *They were given their first injection.*

## CHAPTER 16

- 1) Why were the injections important?
  - a. *Answers may vary. The scientists were trying to make the rats live longer, become stronger and more intelligent.*
- 2) Why did the scientists use a maze in their experiments?
  - a. *To see if the rats would become faster, and ultimately be capable of learning.*
- 3) Who did Nicodemus befriend in this chapter?
  - a. *Justin*
- 4) What did Justin find out while trying to escape?
  - a. *That the scientists were performing experiments on mice as well.*

## CHAPTER 17

- 1) What did Nicodemus begin to realize about living at the lab?
  - a. *First that they were smarter and faster than other rats and second that they were living longer than other rats.*
- 2) What did the scientists teach the rats to do?
  - a. *Read*
- 3) How did Justin escape from his cage?
  - a. *He read the instructions on the bottom of the cage.*

## CHAPTER 18

- 1) How did Justin find a way to escape the Laboratory?
  - a. *Through the air vent.*
- 2) How do they decide to escape?
  - a. *Over seven nights Justin uses string to track where the duct leads.*
- 3) How do the rats meet Jonathan Frisby and Mr. Ages?
  - a. *Jonathan speaks on behalf of the mice and asks that the rats open their cages before they escape so that the mice also have a chance. Mr. Ages helps Jonathan to open the vent to the outside.*
- 4) As they escape, how do Jonathan and Mr. Ages help and save the rats?
  - a. *The vent is too heavy to lift, but the mice make a hole big enough for them to get out and loosen the outer bolts.*

## CHAPTER 19

- 1) How many years did the rats and mice travel to find a home?
  - a. *Two years*
- 2) What do the rats object to doing now that they are smarter?
  - a. *Stealing*
- 3) Where do they stay during the winter?
  - a. *The Boniface Estate.*

## CHAPTER 20

- 1) What is in the main hall?
  - a. *The main hall is a large storage and work area.*
- 2) What is the Plan?
  - a. *The rats have decided to leave the rosebush and move to the secluded country where they will farm and live on their own, eventually never having to steal or depend on stealing.*

## CHAPTER 21

- 1) How long do the rats stay at the Boniface estate?
  - a. *They stay for eight months.*
- 2) What did Nicodemus learn from the books at the estate?
  - a. *That rats are disliked because of their reputation for stealing and that this way of life led to laziness and extinction.*
- 3) What did the rats find in the wilderness preserve?
  - a. *They found Toy Tinker and his truck.*

## CHAPTER 22

- 1) After finding the Toy Tinker's Truck and equipment, where did the Rats decide to live?
  - a. *Under the rosebush by Mr. Fitzgibbon's farm.*
- 2) Why did the rats become discontent after settling into the Rosebush?
  - a. *Life was too easy and now the rats dwelt on matters that were counter-productive.*
- 3) What did the rats decide to do instead of continuing to steal?
  - a. *Move away from the farm and become self-sufficient.*
- 4) Where did the owl suggest they move to?
  - a. *Thorn Valley*

## CHAPTER 23

- 1) Why did Jenner Leave?
  - a. *He wanted to continue to live off the farm. He did not think they could survive at Thorn Valley.*
- 2) Why was the task of drugging Dragon harder than originally planned?
  - a. *Dragon's food bowl was moved farther away from where Mr. Ages had described it. Mrs. Frisby had to run farther than she had planned.*
- 3) What happens to Mrs. Frisby after she has powdered Dragon's food?
  - a. *She is captured in a colander by the younger Fitzgibbon son, Billy.*

## CHAPTER 24

- 1) What news does Mr. Fitzgibbons have from town?
  - a. *Seven rats were found dead in the hardware store. Some authorities came to investigate.*
- 2) What will happen to the rosebush and the rats?
  - a. *The authorities agree to come to Mr. Fitzgibbon's house, tear out the rose bush and exterminate the rats.*

## CHAPTER 25

- 1) How does Mrs. Frisby escape the cage?
  - a. *Justin arrives and loosens the cage door in a manner that would look like it broke.*

- 2) Where does Justin go after taking Mrs. Frisby to her home?
  - a. *He goes to speak to Nicodemus.*
- 3) How do the rats move her home?
  - a. *First, they move the cinder block with a series of pulleys. Next, they rest the block on a group of wooden rollers which moves the block over to the lee of the stone. Lastly, they lift the block once more with pulleys and set it onto the ground.*

#### CHAPTER 26

- 1) After hearing the news that NIMH is coming, what do the rats decide to do?
  - a. *The rats decide to move to Thorn Valley during the night. They will destroy all evidence of their home in the Rosebush.*
- 2) What does Justin volunteer to do?
  - a. *Justin volunteers to stay behind to give the appearance of a true rat's nest. This is a risk for him because he could be caught or killed by the gas.*

#### CHAPTER 27

- 1) How do the rats trick the exterminators into thinking there are more rats?
  - a. *The rats confused the exterminators by running from the dummy escape hole then running back to give the appearance of several more rats.*
- 2) After he is revived by Mr. Ages, what does Brutus describe about his escape?
  - a. *Brutus explains that he had inhaled too much gas and could not see. He stumbled over another rat and fell. Finally, he was guided by another rat, but could not tell who it was.*

#### CHAPTER 28

- 1) Is Mrs. Frisby's family safe from the plow?
  - a. *Yes, the owl and rats were correct in their calculations and the family is safe.*
- 2) Does Mrs. Frisby think she will ever see the rats again?
  - a. *Mrs. Frisby doubts she will see the rats again because of the danger of being caught by NIMH.*
- 3) After telling the children the story of the Rats of NIMH, what does Martin want to do?
  - a. *Martin asks if he can have Jeremy take him to Thorn Valley to meet the rats of NIMH and find out who rescued his mother in the tunnel.*

# My Side of the Mountain

## **Author's Preface:**

- 1) How long was the author gone when she ran away?
  - a. *About 40 minutes*
- 2) Why wouldn't the publisher publish her work at first?
  - a. *He did not believe it was appropriate to encourage children to run away from home.*
- 3) Why did the publisher change his mind?
  - a. *Because of the comment, "It is better for kids to run to the woods than to the city."*

## **CHAPTER 1: I Hole up in a Snowstorm**

- 1) What kind of tree did he live in?
  - a. *Hemlock*
- 2) Of what was his fireplace made?
  - a. *Clay and stones*
- 3) Of what were these common household objects made?
  - 1) Lamp:
    - a. *turtle shell, deer fat, strip of old pants*
  - 2) calendar:
    - a. *notched aspen pole*
  - 3) lighter:
    - a. *flint and steel*
  - 4) door:
    - a. *deerskin*
  - 5) bed:
    - a. *ash slats and deerskin*
- 4) How many sisters and brothers did he have?
  - a. *He had four sisters and four brothers.*

## **CHAPTER 2: I Get Started on this Venture**

- 1) With what did Sam leave New York?
  - a. *A penknife, a ball of cord, an ax, flint and steel, and \$40.*
- 2) What did Sam catch to eat?
  - a. *Trout*
- 3) Why did Sam go hungry?
  - a. *He could not start a fire.*
- 4) Who helped him?
  - a. *A truck driver and a man named Bill.*

## **CHAPTER 3: I Find Gribbley's Farm**

- 1) What did the librarian do for Sam?
  - a. *The librarian helped him find the information about his great-grandfather's farm and drew maps for him.*
- 2) What did Sam eat for dinner that first night on his great-grandfather's farm?
  - a. *A catfish*
- 3) What did Sam find when he reached his great-grandfather's farm?
  - a. *The boundary walls and the ruins of the old farmhouse*

## CHAPTER 4: I Find Many Useful Plants

No questions

## CHAPTER 5: The Old, Old Tree

- 1) What was Sam's first bath in the wild like?
  - a. *Very cold*
- 2) What did he eat for lunch?
  - a. *Dogtooth violet bulbs, dandelion green salad, and crow eggs*
- 3) Why did Sam want a concealed home?
  - a. *So no one would bother him or try to take him home*
- 4) Why did Sam choose the tree that he chose?
  - a. *It was big and it was rotted in the center, so it would be easier to dig out.*
- 5) What did Sam use as a fire bucket?
  - a. *Dirt*

## CHAPTER 6: I Meet One of My Own Kind and Have a Terrible Time Getting Away

- 1) Why did the old woman want the strawberries?
  - a. *She wanted strawberries to make jam.*
- 2) What should Sam have paid attention to in order to have avoided meeting the old woman?
  - a. *A raccoon*

## CHAPTER 7: The King's Provider

- 1) How did he reach Frightful?
  - a. *He climbed a cliff.*

## VOCABULARY CHAPTERS 8-13: tannic acid, jesses

## CHAPTER 8: What I Did About the First Man Who Was After Me

- 1) What did Sam eat for dinner the night he hid from the ranger?
  - a. *Rabbit*
- 2) Where did Sam sleep the night he hid from the ranger?
  - a. *In a lean-to made of boughs just below the rim of the gorge.*

## CHAPTER 9: I Learn to Season My Food

- 1) What animal was not only unafraid of Sam, but also berated him?
  - a. *A weasel*
- 2) What kind of tree did Sam use to create his seasoning?
  - a. *Hickory*

## CHAPTER 10: How a Door Came to Me

- 1) Why did Frightful become "misshapen?"
  - a. *She ate too much venison.*
- 2) What made the popping noise that night as Sam lay in the grass?
  - a. *Earthworms*

## CHAPTER 11: Frightful Learns Her ABC's

- 1) What does Sam use as a needle?
  - a. *A bone fragment.*

- 2) What was Sam's favorite meal?
  - a. *Frog*
- 3) What was Frightful's first live prey?
  - a. *A sparrow*

#### **CHAPTER 12: I Find a Real Live Man**

- 1) What was Bando's profession?
  - a. *College English teacher*
- 2) Why was he there?
  - a. *He had gotten lost.*

#### **CHAPTER 13: The Autumn Provides Food and Loneliness**

- 1) Why was Frightful sick?
  - a. *The fire in the tree house used up all the oxygen.*
- 2) How did Sam get the clay up to his house?
  - a. *He carried it in his pants.*

#### **VOCABULARY CHAPTERS 14-18: conspicuous, sanguine, portico**

#### **CHAPTER 14: We All Learn About Halloween**

- 1) What animal caused the new smell after the Halloween party?
  - a. *A skunk*

#### **CHAPTER 15: I Find Out What to Do with Hunters**

- 1) How many deer did Sam claim?
  - a. *3*
- 2) What does Sam make from the deer hides?
  - a. *A jacket and a blanket*

#### **CHAPTER 16: Trouble Begins**

- 1) With what is Sam's outfit lined?
  - a. *Rabbit fur*
- 2) How did Sam say he usually made friends?
  - a. *By fighting someone first and becoming friends later.*

#### **CHAPTER 17: I Pile up Wood and Go on with Winter**

- 1) Where does Sam stack his wood?
  - a. *An arm's length from his door with the subsequent stack each an arm's length from the other all the way to the edge of the woods.*
- 2) When the snow is very deep, how does Sam plan to get from wood stack to wood stack?
  - a. *He plans to tunnel.*
- 3) What does he end up doing to get to the wood stacks?
  - a. *He walks on top of the snow.*

#### **CHAPTER 18: I Learn About Birds and People**

- 1) What do the newspaper clippings call Sam?
  - a. *Wild Boy*



- 2) Why did Sam's dad have to finish his tea before he could eat?
  - a. *Sam did not have another turtle shell, which he used to serve food.*

**VOCABULARY CHAPTER 19-22: barometer**

**CHAPTER 19: I Have a Good Look at Winter and Find Spring in the Snow**

- 1) What trapped Sam in his tree house?
  - a. *Ice*
- 2) Why did deer come to Sam?
  - a. *He fed them tree limbs.*
- 3) What exploded all around Sam?
  - a. *Frozen trees*

**CHAPTER 20: The Spring in the Winter and the Beginning of My Story's End**

- 1) How does Matt tell Sam that he knows Sam is the Wild Boy?
  - a. *Matt reads notes he has taken during their conversation, but instead of being notes about a mythical Wild Boy as Sam has described, they are notes describing Sam himself.*

**CHAPTER 21: I Cooperate with the Ending**

- 1) What did Mr. Jacket (Tom Sidler) help Sam catch?
  - a. *A large snapping turtle*

**CHAPTER 22: The City Comes to Me**

- 1) What happened to Sam's family?
  - a. *They all came up the mountain to live with Sam.*

# Old Yeller

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** scabbard, cattle, cur, depredations, ash hopper

- 1) Why was Old Yeller called that name?
  - a. *He had a yellowish color and his bark was more like a yell.*
- 2) Why did Papa leave?
  - a. *He went on the trail to Kansas to sell the cattle for "cash money."*
- 3) What did Travis want more than anything?
  - a. *A horse*
- 4) Why did his father warn him that the most important thing he needed to do was to keep watch over the corn patch?
  - a. *Corn was a major food source for them in the winter.*

## CHAPTER 2

- 1) What did the "yeller" dog steal?
  - a. *A side of hog meat.*
- 2) What did Travis have to do because of it?
  - a. *He had to go hunt for deer and think over the need to keep the dog.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** venison

- 1) What are the Licks?
  - a. *Rocks that have salt in them.*
- 2) Why are they important?
  - a. *Animals come to lick them to get their daily supply of salt.*
- 3) Why did Arliss try to hit his brother with a rock?
  - a. *Travis had thrown rocks at Arliss's dog.*
- 4) Why did Travis hang the venison where the dog had gotten to it before?
  - a. *It was the best place for it, and he wanted an excuse to get rid of the dog.*

## CHAPTER 4

- 1) How did Travis almost get hurt very badly?
  - a. *He was sitting on the fence and the bulls knocked into it while fighting.*
- 2) What made Travis decide to try to stop the bulls?
  - a. *They were knocking into the house.*
- 3) How did the bull fight end?
  - a. *The chongo bull cut into and lifted the roan into the air. It fell into a cart which rolled down the hill.*

## CHAPTER 5

- 1) What did Little Arliss bring home one day that made his mother have Travis teach him how to throw rocks?
  - a. *A copperhead*
- 2) What did Little Arliss have that made him scream in terror and cause Travis and their mother to run to help?
  - a. *A bear cub*

- 3) How did Old Yeller prove his value to the family?
  - a. *He fought with the mother bear until the family was safely in the cabin.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** sumptuous, bitch, hydrophobia

- 1) What system did Travis work out for killing his pick of squirrels?
  - a. *Old Yeller would find the squirrels, Little Arliss would distract them by making his noises, then Travis would shoot them.*
- 2) What did Travis notice about Old Yeller's eating habits?
  - a. *He would not eat anything they gave him.*
- 3) What did Travis find out when the Searcys came to call?
  - a. *He found out that Old Yeller had been stealing food from all over the settlement.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** varmints

- 1) What did Travis and his mom do at first to try to keep Old Yeller home?
  - a. *They tied him up.*
- 2) Why was Travis so tired all the time?
  - a. *He and Old Yeller slept out in the corn patch and chased away the coons and other animals most of the night every night.*
- 3) How did Old Yeller help train the cow?
  - a. *He bit the cow on the nose and knocked her over to teach her who was boss. Then, all he had to do was to be nearby and the cow was very obedient.*

## CHAPTER 8

- 1) Why was Mama embarrassed when Little Arliss came to meet Burn Sanderson?
  - a. *Little Arliss was naked.*
- 2) Was Mr. Sanderson kind or mean when he came looking for his dog?
  - a. *Kind*
- 3) What did he ask for in exchange for the dog?
  - a. *A wonderful "woman-cooked" meal.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** shoat, tushes, barrows, castrate

- 1) What did the hogs encircle when Old Yeller threatened them?
  - a. *A tree*
- 2) How did Travis capture the hogs to be marked?
  - a. *He lassoed them and pulled them up to him.*

## CHAPTER 10

- 1) What was different about how Travis had to catch the shoats this time?
  - a. *He was up on a sandy bank.*
- 2) What happened when Travis tried to catch the second shoat?
  - a. *The bank slid down with Travis onto the wild hogs.*
- 3) How did Old Yeller save Travis?
  - a. *He fought the hogs.*

## CHAPTER 11

- 1) What did mama have Little Arliss go get for her?
  - a. *A little striped lizard.*
- 2) What did she use to sew up Old Yeller's wounds?
  - a. *Jumper's tail hair.*
- 3) How did they bring the dog home?
  - a. *Jumper pulled a cow hide. Old Yeller rode on some pillows with little Arliss on the cow hide.*
- 4) How did they give Old Yeller water?
  - a. *In Travis' hat.*

## CHAPTER 12

- 1) How did Mama keep Jumper out of the corn?
  - a. *She tied his leg to a drag.*
- 2) Why did Mr. Searcy leave Lisbeth?
  - a. *So she could help out.*

## CHAPTER 13

- 1) What made Old Yeller get up when he was still recovering from his injuries?
  - a. *He scented that the chongo bull was sick and dangerous.*
- 2) What did Travis do to the bull?
  - a. *He shot it between the eyes.*

## CHAPTER 14

- 1) Why did Travis wait until the cow was so far away to kill her?
  - a. *There was a drought and he wanted to kill her where the grass would not catch fire.*
- 2) What did Mama bring to start the fire?
  - a. *Burning embers*
- 3) What did Little Arliss do while they were gone?
  - a. *He played with the puppy.*

## CHAPTER 15

- 1) How did Mama find the wolf?
  - a. *It attacked them at the creek.*
- 2) What was the heart-wrenching task Travis had to do?
  - a. *Kill Old Yeller.*

## CHAPTER 16

- 1) Why did Travis mourn the loss of Old Yeller when he had killed other animals before?
  - a. *Old Yeller was his companion. He had saved the family members in different situations. Travis loved Old Yeller.*

# Outlaws of Ravenhurst

## CHAPTER 1

- 1) What was the weather like?
  - a. *Foggy, cold, and sleeting*
- 2) What did the baby keep crying out?
  - a. *"Dunkie Teewee!"*
- 3) What was the baby wrapped in?
  - a. *Sailcloth*
- 4) Where did the ship land?
  - a. *Along the coast of Maryland.*
- 5) What was the mood described in this chapter?
  - a. *The mood is secretive.*
- 6) Were we witnessing wanton neglect of a child or a profound sacrifice?
  - a. *We are witnessing a profound sacrifice.*

## CHAPTER 2

- 1) What were Joel and George doing in the woods?
  - a. *Fishing*
- 2) What did Joel hit with the stone?
  - a. *A mother bear*
- 3) When Joel hurt his foot while running away from a bear, what did George do?
  - a. *He helped Joel get up a tree.*
- 4) What was in the tree he boys climbed?
  - a. *A bear cub*
- 5) What happened to the bear?
  - a. *George shot it.*
- 6) What happened to George?
  - a. *He fell out of the tree and the bear landed on top of him.*

## CHAPTER 3

### VOCABULARY: gauntlet, scion

- 1) Why was Mrs. Abell so upset?
  - a. *George's uncle had come to take him away with no warning whatever.*
- 2) How did Sir Roger treat the family whom George loved so dearly?
  - a. *Like they were of no importance, like they were scum.*
- 3) What did Mr. Abell refuse?
  - a. *He refused to take Sir Roger's money.*

## CHAPTER 4

### VOCABULARY: cordage, agate, frith, claymore, liege, morasses

- 1) What was Godfrey like?
  - a. *He was kind and pleasant. He told George/Charles Gordon stories.*
- 2) What was Fire-the-Braes like?
  - a. *He was the first chieftain of the Gordon Clan. He was very brave and fought lots of people.*
- 3) What did Lang Shank do that caused the king to make him an Earl?

- a. *He swam the firth, gave allies a message, and caught and took care of an entire nest of traitors.*
- 4) What happened to the man who refused to take his boat across the firth during the oncoming storm?
  - a. *He was kindly sent home.*

## CHAPTER 5

- 1) What did Sir Roger want to eliminate in George/Charles Gordon? Why?
  - a. *His Catholic Faith; it was illegal*
- 2) How did Godfrey say Sir Roger should approach eliminating it?
  - a. *By tempting George/Charles Gordon with other things and allowing the Faith to die naturally.*
- 3) How did everyone greet George/Charles Gordon?
  - a. *They shot cannons and cried, "The Gordon."*
- 4) How did Sir Roger feel toward Lady Margaret?
  - a. *He thought of her as an enemy.*
- 5) Who was the only person George/Charles Gordon saw as a friend when he entered his castle?
  - a. *His mother, Lady Margaret*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** yeomen, mantel

- 1) What did the fireplace look like the first night in Gordon's room?
  - a. *Two yeomen stood on the hearth, holding the mantel on their spears, only a white linen cloth adorned the shelf, two knights stood crossing swords above a picture.*
- 2) What was in the painting above the fireplace the first night in Gordon's room?
  - a. *An old warrior and a little boy.*
- 3) What had dropped on the fireplace?
  - a. *The blood of Christ in Holy Communion.*
- 4) How does Lady Margaret test Gordon's mettle?
  - a. *She looks sternly at him when he says he is a Catholic.*
- 5) Who had taken Gordon overseas?
  - a. *His Uncle Stephan, who is a priest.*
- 6) Why had Gordon been taken away from his mother?
  - a. *They thought his mother was going to die.*
- 7) What did Lady Margaret wish for her husband?
  - a. *She wished that he was dead.*
- 8) What secret did Lady Margaret tell Gordon about?
  - a. *A secret passageway*
- 9) Whom did Lady Margaret say Gordon could trust?
  - a. *Benson and old Edwin*
- 10) Whom did she say to especially not trust?
  - a. *Godfrey and Sir Roger*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** fortnight, sword

- 1) What did the fireplace look like the morning after his first night in his room?

- a. *Nothing like the night before. It had 4 pillars and oaken trunks with grape vine carvings instead of yeomen, and figurines on the shelf.*
- 2) What was in the painting above the fireplace the morning after the first night in Gordon's room?
  - a. *David Gordon/ Fire-the-Braes*
- 3) Where did Godfrey say Gordon's mother was?
  - a. *Merrymaking*
- 4) Who are Gordon's playmates?
  - a. *No one; they children are below his dignity according to his uncle; he throws himself into his studies instead.*
- 5) Where does Sir Roger say Gordon's mother is off to do?
  - a. *To be maid of honor for the queen*
- 6) Do you think Gordon's mother would do that? Why or why not?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 7) Who seems to be trustworthy and honest, Gordon's mother or Godfrey and Sir Roger?
  - a. *Gordon's mother*
- 8) Why do you think people are trying to confuse Gordon?
  - a. *For their own political ends.*
- 9) Would you trust Old Edwin? Why or why not?
  - a. *Yes. He is does not appear to be deceptive; he tries to be supportive.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** minster, cloister, caustic, mite, dross

- 1) Why does Gordon take a long, fast horse ride?
  - a. *Because his uncle has just told him that if he gives up his Catholic Faith, he will receive the best education in Scotland.*
- 2) What does Gordon find in his pocket?
  - a. *Rosary beads*
- 3) What do they remind him of?
  - a. *That he had promised the Abells to pray the Rosary every day and that they had promised to do the same for him.*
- 4) What does Gordon find in the tabernacle of the ruined church?
  - a. *A bird in a nest.*
- 5) What does Uncle Stephan say to do with it?
  - a. *To leave it alone.*
- 6) What does Uncle Stephan say about Godfrey?
  - a. *He is a liar and the son of Bertrand who is also a liar.*
- 7) What does Uncle Stephan say about Lady Margaret?
  - a. *That she has a deep love for Gordon and has given up her child and her freedom just so she could speak with Gordon of the Faith and of his father.*
- 8) How do you feel about law that allows children to be taken away from their parents if the parents teach their own children a religion than is established by the rulers of the country?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 9) What does Uncle Stephan say about why Gordon's father was jailed and, perhaps, killed?
  - a. *He had given Uncle Stephan food and shelter and doing that for a Catholic priest was illegal at that time in Scotland.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** impudence

- 1) What had been Sir Roger's mother's dying wish?
  - a. *That the fireplace in Gordon's room be kept sacred, not for common use.*
- 2) What happened in Gordon's room that make Sir Roger so angry?
  - a. *The servants had been burning a fire in its fireplace.*
- 3) What did Godfrey ask Sir Roger not to do to Gordon?
  - a. *He asked him not to use violence.*
- 4) What did Sir Roger do to Gordon?
  - a. *He whipped Gordon.*
- 5) What had everyone called Sir Roger?
  - a. *The Weakling of the House of Gordon.*
- 6) What did Sir Roger say Gordon had to do?
  - a. *He said he had to give up the Catholic Faith and tell him everything about his encounter with Stephan Douglas before he could eat any more meals.*

## CHAPTER 10

- 1) Where does Betsy think Lady Margaret is?
  - a. *In the dungeons.*
- 2) Whom does Gordon try to contact for help?
  - a. *Old Edwin*
- 3) What does this person do?
  - a. *Using reflected light, he traces antlers onto Gordon's ceiling.*
- 4) What does Gordon find?
  - a. *A book with a letter from his mother in it.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** lisping, retinue, azure, chivalry, largess, benediction, infamous, lazaretto, obliterated, sacrilege, pibroch, buskined, obeisance

- 1) How would you characterize Lady Anne?
  - a. *Good mother, devoted wife, faithful Catholic, true to Scotland, Strong, dutiful, etc.*
- 2) Why did Lang Sword have to leave right after he had just returned home?
  - a. *Henry VIII's troops were on their way to make war.*
- 3) What does Lady Anne do whenever her husband is gone?
  - a. *She watches for him at the window.*
- 4) Why did Scotland lose to England so handily?
  - a. *Many of the Lairds were traitors.*
- 5) What was Lady Anne's response when the men laid her husband's body at her feet?
  - a. *She strengthened herself, had her son lay his hand on his father's chest and recite what she had taught him, then had all present swear loyalty to her son and the newborn Queen Mary of Scots.*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** shrovetide peace, confiscating, rack, gilly

- 1) What was the state of Ravenhurst when Angus was 70 years old?
  - a. *Impoverished, yet holy.*
- 2) What was Angus out doing when he heard the moaning?
  - a. *Returning home from hunting a deer.*



- 3) Why was the Friar moaning?
  - a. *He was dying. He had been imprisoned, starved, and racked.*
- 4) What did Angus do with the Friar?
  - a. *He brought him into the castle and had him nursed back to health.*
- 5) Why did so many people come to the castle at three in the morning on Easter?
  - a. *They came for mass, which was illegal.*
- 6) Who was the traitor in their midst?
  - a. *Bertrand*
- 7) Why was it especially despicable that the person in #6 was the betrayer?
  - a. *He had been saved and cared for by Angus.*
- 8) For what reason was the person in #6 betraying all those at Ravenhurst?
  - a. *For money*
- 9) Where did the children hide during the fight?
  - a. *They hid under the bed.*
- 10) What did Angus do when it was just him and Muckle John against all the soldiers?
  - a. *He fought and then convinced the Captain and some other soldiers to fight for him.*
- 11) What happened during all the fighting that made the hiding children especially horrified?
  - a. *The blood of Christ had spilled.*
- 12) How many soldiers were left standing after the fight?
  - a. *5*
- 13) Why did the men leave the ruby-encrusted chalice?
  - a. *Because it was "bad luck" and they needed to focus on getting their captive into prison.*

## CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** paten, derisively

- 1) What did the children do once all the soldiers were gone?
  - a. *They agonized over how to clean things up. They prayed. Then they did their best to take care of the Holy Eucharist.*
- 2) How was the children's hiding place revealed?
  - a. *Roger pushed the others in selfish cowardice.*
- 3) Who came back to steal the chalice?
  - a. *Bertrand*
- 4) What did he do when he found the children?
  - a. *He beat them and tried to make them tell him where the chalice was.*
- 5) Who betrayed Stephan?
  - a. *Roger*
- 6) Who set everything to rights?
  - a. *Benson*
- 7) When Roger protested against doing servant's work, what did Benson reply?
  - a. *She said Roger was not so concerned about following a servant's orders when Bertrand was ordering him about.*

## CHAPTER 14

**VOCABULARY:** abominable

- 1) What is Angus Gordon accused of doing?
  - a. *Being a traitor because of practicing his faith.*
- 2) What is Angus's sentence?
  - a. *Beheading*

- 3) Sir Edward is the Angus' children's guardian while Angus and Isabelle are imprisoned.  
What does Edward insist the children do?
  - a. *Witness Angus' execution.*
- 4) As the children approach the people, what does Roger do?
  - a. *He tries to hide.*
- 5) What does Allen do?
  - a. *He refuses to kill the innocent Angus.*
- 6) Who actually kills Angus?
  - a. *Bertrand*
- 7) Do you think he was justified in killing Angus?
  - a. *No.*

## CHAPTER 15

**VOCABULARY:** myriad, seraphim, petulant, exaltation

- 1) What does Roger do when Gordon tells him that he can change for the good even now?
  - a. *He beats him mercilessly.*
- 2) What strengthens Gordon?
  - a. *Kissing the spot where the precious blood was spilt.*

## CHAPTER 16

- 1) How does Gordon escape?
  - a. *He remembers there is a secret tunnel beyond the fireplace.*
- 2) What are his uncle and Godfrey planning?
  - a. *To assassinate him with poison.*

## CHAPTER 17

- 1) What did Gordon find all along the passageway before he came to the water?
  - a. *Peep holes*
- 2) What were the snakes really?
  - a. *Fingers*

## CHAPTER 18

**VOCABULARY:** escutcheon, riven, abyss

- 1) What was going through the tunnel like for Gordon?
  - a. *Dark, he had to crawl most of the way, the rocks were slimy, he fell very far once.*
- 2) What happened that made him stop going?
  - a. *Someone grabbed his foot.*
- 3) Who found him in the tunnels?
  - a. *His father, James Gordon, found him in the tunnel.*
- 4) What is the Blind Duncan?
  - a. *A death trap within the tunnel system that has steep, slippery pits with spikes.*
- 5) Who did he send Gordon to find?
  - a. *Muckle John of the Clueth*
- 6) What did he tie in the tunnels, so he could find his way back again?
  - a. *Ripped pieces of his plaid clothing.*
- 7) What made him climb the tree once he made it out of the tunnels?
  - a. *Three wolves*

- 8) Who found him in the tree?
  - a. *Muckle John of the Clueth*

## CHAPTER 19

**VOCABULARY:** thra, twa, ain

- 1) Why didn't Charles Gordon tell Muckle John his father's message right away?
  - a. *He was unconscious and feverish.*
- 2) What happened when Charles managed to get even a few words of his father's message to Muckle John?
  - a. *Muckle John summoned his men to go help Sir James Gordon.*
- 3) Who was saved from the wrath of Godfrey?
  - a. *Betsy*
- 4) Who was the sentry?
  - a. *Old Edwin*
- 5) How had the Lord and Lady escaped their prisons?
  - a. *Old Edwin found and saved them.*

## CHAPTER 20

**VOCABULARY:** scullions, lief, corporal

- 1) How long had Muckle John stayed with Charles Gordon until the boy was able to give him bits of his father's message?
  - a. *10 days*
- 2) Why did Sir Roger's men stop taking orders from him?
  - a. *Because they recognized Sir James and held their allegiance with him.*
- 3) What did the Earl plan to do now that he had his freedom and men who would rally around him?
  - a. *He wanted whomever of the clan who desired it to go with him to America where they could freely keep their Faith.*
- 4) What did he promise them if they would follow him?
  - a. *He promised them only freedom to worship and, most likely, poverty.*
- 5) Why did Muckle John choose not to follow through with his plans to beat Sir Roger?
  - a. *Because Fr. Stephan convinced him vengeance is a sin.*

## CHAPTER 21

- 1) Why did Lady Margaret want to stay a few more days, though it would be perilous to do so?
  - a. *Because her only son was struggling between life and death.*
- 2) What prayer did everyone pray for Charles Gordon?
  - a. *The Rosary*
- 3) How many ships did the clan leave in?
  - a. *Two*
- 4) What did Stephan Douglas do?
  - a. *He stayed in Scotland and died alone.*
- 5) Why didn't Old Edwin go with the clan?
  - a. *He needed to stay with his mother who was very old.*

## CHAPTER 22

**VOCABULARY:** calking, derelict

- 1) What was it like to cross the ocean?

- a. *Very rough*
- 2) Which ship made it to the American coast?
  - a. *The Nancy Kitts*
- 3) How did Charles Gordon convince his father to allow him to look for game?
  - a. *He explained that no one would let him help unload, his mother and the others who were sick needed food, and that John Abell had taught him well about how not to get lost.*
- 4) What landmark did Charles Gordon recognize?
  - a. *Sutter's knob*

## CHAPTER 23

- 1) What did Gordon do?
  - a. *He went straight to the Abell's Farm.*
- 2) What was the family doing when Gordon got there?
  - a. *Praying the Rosary and about to pray a second one for his safety.*
- 3) What did the family do once the whole story came out?
  - a. *They went to help all the people.*
- 4) Why was Gordon concerned that he had been gone so long?
  - a. *Because he knew everyone would be worried about him.*

# Redwall

## **BOOK 1: CHAPTERS 1-13**

**VOCABULARY**, buffoon, cloisters, tapestry, bilge, scourge, standard, legerdemain, visage, replete, berth, skittle, chronicle, emanating, hillock, loam, rudimentary, tactician, husband (verb), nocked

### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 1**

- 1) Why does Matthias keep tripping?
  - a. *His sandals are too big.*
- 2) Where are Matthias' parents?
  - a. *Matthias is an orphan. He was left at the Abbey gates as a baby.*
- 3) Who is Martin the Warrior?
  - a. *Martin is the legendary patron of the Abbey. He was once a real mouse, a great warrior, and one of the founders of the Abbey.*
- 4) What kind of tasks are the creatures in the Abbey's Order supposed to carry out?
  - a. *They are supposed to "heal the sick, care for the injured, and give aid to the wretched and impoverished." They take a vow never to harm another living creature, unless it was in self-defense or in defense of the Order or another defenseless animal.*

### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 2**

- 1) How did Cluny lose his eye?
  - a. *Cluny had a fight with a pike-fish, which he won, but at the expense of his eye.*
- 2) What is Cluny's standard?
  - a. *Cluny's standard is a long pole with a ferret's skull on top of it.*
- 3) What is Cluny's main weapon?
  - a. *Cluny's main weapon is his long, whip-like tail, to which he often affixes a poisoned barb.*

### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 3**

- 1) What is Brother Alf's job? What about Friar Hugo?
  - a. *Brother Alf is in charge of the Abbey pond, and of procuring fish. Friar Hugo is a cook and is in charge of the Abbey kitchens.*
- 2) Name some of the delicious foods at the Abbey feast. Which one sounds tastiest to you?
  - a. *Answers may vary.*
- 3) How does Matthias feel about Cornflower?
  - a. *Matthias thinks Cornflower is pretty and sweet and kind. He has a little crush on her.*

### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 4**

- 1) What does Cluny order Skullface to do?
  - a. *Cluny orders Skullface to bite the horse to make it go faster.*

### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 5**

- 1) What act of kindness does Abbot Mortimer enact at the beginning of this chapter?
  - a. *Abbot Mortimer packs up some food and provisions for the Churchmouse family since they are poor, and does it in such a way as to not embarrass them.*
- 2) Why does Matthias accompany the Churchmouse family home?
  - a. *Matthias goes along as a bodyguard.*

- 3) Find at least one phrase or sentence that describes the peace Matthias felt as he drove home with Cornflower and her family.
  - a. *Answers may vary, but almost any sentence from page 28, from the paragraph beginning "The big badger trundled the cart away..." would answer this question.*
- 4) What does Constance do to save the cart and its passengers from the runaway horse?
  - a. *Constance heaves the cart through a hedge and into a ditch to hide it and to get it off the road.*
- 5) How does Matthias act after this scary experience?
  - a. *Matthias is shaken but acts brave so the Churchmouse family isn't scared. He immediately takes on the role of Constance's second-in-command.*

#### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 6**

- 1) What does Cluny instruct his horde to do if they come upon any local animals in their homes?
  - a. *He tells them to recruit them for his army, and if they won't come, to destroy their homes and kill them.*

#### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 7**

- 1) How does Abbot Mortimer know the big rat was Cluny the Scourge?
  - a. *Abbot Mortimer recognizes the description of a big, one-eyed, whip-tailed rat.*
- 2) How do the other creatures act when the Abbot says it was Cluny?
  - a. *They laugh and scoff a bit, because they think Cluny is a kind of bogey-man, not a real threat.*
- 3) Who is Old Methuselah?
  - a. *Methuselah is the record-keeper of the Abbey and a friend of Matthias.*
- 4) What are some of the stories about Cluny that Methuselah find in his records?
  - a. *Answers may vary, but some include that Cluny burned down a farmhouse, his horde ate an entire litter of piglets alive, that they spread sickness and disease, and that they once caused a deliberate stampede of cattle through a small village.*

#### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 8**

- 1) What is Cluny's nightmare about?
  - a. *Cluny has a nightmare about an avenging mouse-warrior chasing him with a bright sword.*
- 2) What kind of food do the scavengers bring for Cluny to eat? How does he feel about this food?
  - a. *The scavengers bring Cluny some dead beetles, earthworms, vegetation, and an old bird-carcass. Cluny is disgusted and berates the scavengers, demanding real food and red meat.*

#### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 9**

- 1) Why does Methuselah tell Matthias the story about Martin?
  - a. *Methuselah says that Matthias reminds him of Martin.*
- 2) What happens when the rat tries to enter the Abbey?
  - a. *The rat tries to push past Brother Rufus, and Brother Rufus sends him spinning with a blow from his staff.*
- 3) What is the message that Ambrose Spike must carry to animals outside the Abbey walls?
  - a. *Ambrose is sent to tell the creatures outside the Abbey to come to the Abbey for safety if possible, and if not, to shelter in place and hide.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 10

- 1) What kinds of things does Cluny wear to intimidate others?
  - a. *Cluny wears a long black cloak made of bat-wings, a war-helmet with blackbird feathers and stag-beetle horns and a visor, an eyepatch, and of course his tail-spike.*
- 2) What does Matthias ask Cluny to do before he enters the Abbey, by way of surrendering his weapons?
  - a. *Matthias asks Cluny to knot his tail about his waist.*
- 3) Find two examples of Cluny's bad manners inside the Abbey.
  - a. *Answers may vary. Cluny insolently stares and Cornflower, spits on the floor, interrupts the Abbot, and insults him.*
- 4) What is Cluny's ultimatum?
  - a. *Cluny demands that the Abbey will surrender to him, and that all property will belong to Cluny. He will kill any who oppose him and take others as slaves. When the Abbot refuses his terms, Cluny says that now all the Abbey-dwellers must die.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 11

- 1) How do the moles rescue Ambrose?
  - a. *The moles tunnel directly under Ambrose and he is taken down through the ground, back through the tunnel, into the Abbey.*
- 2) What has happened to the Vole family?
  - a. *The Vole family has been captured by Cluny.*
- 3) What does Matthias ask Martin?
  - a. *Matthias asks Martin what he'd have done in Matthias' place.*
- 4) What does Martin say to Matthias, through Cornflower?
  - a. *Cornflower tells Matthias that it is ok to cry, because it shows that he has compassion for other creatures, unlike Cluny, and also that he is kind and good-hearted and brave. She tells him that he will be a courageous leader someday, and that he is a true Warrior. Matthias realizes that Martin is speaking to him through Cornflower.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 12

- 1) Who is Shadow? What does he look like?
  - a. *Shadow is a huge black animal, perhaps a weasel or a rat. He is Cluny's spy, burglar, and assassin. He is "lithe and wiry" with black, dead eyes.*
- 2) What does Cluny want Shadow to steal?
  - a. *Cluny wants Shadow to steal the tapestry of Martin the Warrior.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 13

- 1) What kinds of preparations are the Abbey creatures making?
  - a. *The Abbey creatures are gathering crops and food in case of a siege, and are also gathering rocks to throw down on the attackers, and arrows and staffs to fight with.*
- 2) What is Matthias teaching some of the mice?
  - a. *Matthias is teaching mice how to fight with a quarter-staff.*
- 3) What does Methuselah tell Matthias that could be very exciting news?
  - a. *Methuselah starts to tell Matthias that he might know the location of Martin the Warrior's tomb. Then he falls asleep!*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTERS 14-20

**VOCABULARY:** cowl: expendable: laconic: onslaught: sinuous: skulk: curmudgeon: curtilage: outmoded: poleaxing: flaccid: fletching: sibilant

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 14

- 1) How does Shadow get into the Abbey?
  - a. *Shadow climbs up the wall hand over hand.*
- 2) Who or what wakes Matthias up to let him know the tapestry is being stolen?
  - a. *Matthias dreams of Martin the Warrior calling for his help.*
- 3) What happens to Mr. Fieldmouse?
  - a. *Mr. Fieldmouse is stabbed by Shadow.*
- 4) Why does Cluny leave Shadow behind?
  - a. *Cluny says he doesn't help or carry cripples or bunglers.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 15

- 1) How do the Abbey-dwellers feel about the tapestry being stolen?
  - a. *They are disheartened and even the rosebuds inside the Abbey have shriveled and died.*
- 2) What is the one piece of good news that Matthias brings?
  - a. *Matthias says that Mr. Fieldmouse will recover from his wounds.*
- 3) As Matthias sneaks out of the Abbey, what is the plan that he 'mentally rehearsed'?
  - a. *Matthias says that he will go to St. Ninian's Church, avoiding the road, then sneak into the chapel, find the tapestry, and create a diversion. He would then grab the tapestry and run back to Redwall as fast as he can.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 16

- 1) How do Mr. and Mrs. Vole act towards Cluny? What happens to them as a result?
  - a. *Mr. and Mrs. Vole are brave and stand up to Cluny. They are dragged off to be dealt with later by Cluny, leaving Colin Vole behind.*
- 2) Where does Cluny wear the poisoned barb?
  - a. *Cluny wears the poisoned barb on the tip of his tail.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 17

- 1) What does Ragear imagine as he hides from Matthias? What actually happens?
  - a. *Ragear imagines himself capturing Matthias and the praise and respect he will get from Cluny when he does so. In reality, he spends too much time daydreaming and Matthias captures him instead, leaving Ragear tied up in the middle of the forest.*
- 2) What makes Matthias suddenly warm and happy enough to hum?
  - a. *The rain stops.*
- 3) Why does Basil wish to be a Stag?
  - a. *Basil says Stags are "noble creatures" with magnificent antlers.*
- 4) Why does Basil like Matthias' novice-habit?
  - a. *Basil says Matthias' green habit will be good camouflage.*
- 5) Matthias does not find the tapestry in the chapel. Who or what does he find?
  - a. *Although the tapestry is gone, Matthias finds the Vole family and frees them.*
- 6) What happens to Matthias and the Vole family at the end of this chapter?
  - a. *On their way back to the Abbey, they walk right into a crowd of Cluny's sentries.*

## BOOK 1, CHAPTER 18

- 1) How do the rats and the Abbey creatures fight in this chapter?
  - a. *The rats shoot arrows and throw stones over the walls, and the mice and woodland creatures return fire over the wall, including an avalanche of rocks.*



- 2) Meanwhile, deep in the forest, what happens to Ragear?
  - a. *Ragear, tied to a tree, is killed by Asmodeus, a huge poisonous adder.*
- 3) What is Cluny's new plan?
  - a. *Cluny plans to sneak to another side of the Abbey and use a high tree to climb over the wall before the mice realize he's there.*
- 4) What did Killconey and Cheesethief discover as they go around the side of the Abbey?
  - a. *They discover Ragear's bloated, dead body, purple from the poison. They also see Asmodeus dragging Ragear away to eat him.*

#### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 19**

- 1) What is Basil Stag Hare's mood like when he is fighting? Find a phrase or sentence from the chapter that supports your answer.
  - a. *Basil is happy and even a little silly. "He came bounding up, for all the world as if he were on a Sunday School picnic, grinning from ear to ear."*
- 2) Why is Matthias frustrated with Basil for a moment?
  - a. *While Matthias has been trying to rescue the Voles and is fighting rats, Basil says he's been dusting out his *den* and drinking mint tea!*
- 3) What does Matthias wonder about Martin the Warrior?
  - a. *Matthias wonders if Martin ever got tired, especially with his heavy sword.*

#### **BOOK 1, CHAPTER 20**

- 1) What do Winifred the Otter and Foremole do with the "boulder"?
  - a. *They catapult the boulder over the wall, and hear it hit many of the enemy.*
- 2) What new weapon did the rats create that is extremely dangerous for the Abbey creatures on the walls?
  - a. *One of the rats comes up with a way to catapult parts of the iron railings from the chapel over the walls.*
- 3) What does Methuselah discover on the stones where the tapestry of Martin had hung?
  - a. *Methuselah discovers there is writing on the stones directly beneath the tapestry's former spot.*

#### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 1**

- 1) Why is Matthias angry with himself?
  - a. *Matthias berates himself for falling asleep lazily when his friends are fighting, perhaps even in danger, back at the Abbey.*
- 2) Who helps him? What is strange about this creature?
  - a. *Matthias is lost when he meets a tiny baby squirrel. It sucks on its paw and nods yes and no, but does not speak. It agrees to help him get back to Redwall.*

#### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 2**

- 1) How can Methuselah tell that there are enemies in the tree?
  - a. *The tree is moving as though blown by the wind, but in the wrong direction.*
- 2) What happens to Cluny when Constance kicks the plank off the wall?
  - a. *Cluny falls and is injured.*
- 3) What horrible murder does Cheesethief commit?
  - a. *Cheesethief comes upon Scragg, who is badly injured from the fall. He taunts Scragg for having stolen Cheesethief's job as leader, and then steps on Scragg's throat until the weasel suffocates.*
- 4) Why doesn't Abbot Mortimer agree to go out and crush Cluny's army while Cluny is injured?

- a. *Abbot Mortimer believes in “tempering justice with mercy”. He will defend the Abbey and its creatures, but he will not kill out of revenge.*

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 3**

- 1) What happens in Cluny’s dream as he lies injured?
  - a. *He dreams of the warrior-mouse again, and this time, the warrior stabs him with his sword.*
- 2) Who does Killconey say are the best healers?
  - a. *Killconey says foxes, and in particular a local vixen that he knows, are the best healers.*

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTERS 4-13**

**VOCABULARY:** ruminant, annals, intrepid, erudite, repast, repulse, haversack, civil, demise, shackle

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 4**

- 1) What is the writing on the wall beneath the tapestry?
  - a. *The writing is a lengthy riddle.*
- 2) Pick a pair of lines from the riddle and explain them.
  - a. *Answers will vary. Matthias and Methuselah do not solve the whole riddle in this chapter, so the student should select a pair of lines which they do figure out here.*
- 3) Which letter on the stairs between Cavern Hole and the Hall is the secret stair? Explain its significance.
  - a. *The ‘W’ in Redwall is in the same place whether the name of the Abbey begins at the top or the bottom of the stairs, and the ‘W’ upside down looks like an ‘M’ for ‘Martin’.*
- 4) Who do Matthias and Methuselah get to help them move the stair? Why?
  - a. *They ask Foremole and his crew to come help. Foremole’s grandmother was an expert on moving stairs.*

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 5**

- 1) Describe Sela.
  - a. *Sela is the vixen (female fox). Sela is a healer and has a son Chickenhound, who lives in Mossflower woods with her.*
- 2) How did she become part of Cluny’s camp?
  - a. *She was ordered by Cluny to heal him. She gives Cluny potions to make him sleepy and uses herbs to treat his wounds*
- 3) How do Sela and Chickenhound fool Fangburn?
  - a. *Sela pretends to write a list of ingredients for Chickenhound to find for her, but in reality it is a message to Abbot Mortimer offering to sell him information about Cluny’s plans. Fangburn cannot read, so he lets Chickenhound go off with the paper.*

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 6**

- 1) Who amazes Cornflower with their huge appetite?
  - a. *Basil Stag Hare amazes Cornflower with his humongous appetite.*
- 2) How does Matthias get the secret door at the end of the passage to open?
  - a. *Matthias unravels the clue above the door and counts the nails in the door to find the one that, when pressed, triggered the door.*
- 3) What is behind the secret door?
  - a. *The tomb of Martin the Warrior is behind the door.*
- 4) What three things do Matthias and Methuselah find in Martin’s tomb? What do they not find?

- a. *Matthias and Methuselah find Martin's sword-belt, shield, and another riddle. They do not find Martin's sword.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 7**

- 1) Does Constance give Sela's message to the Abbot? How do you know this?
  - a. *Constance does not give the Abbot the message. She plans to meet Sela herself. You can tell because the book says "There was no need for the Father Abbot to concern himself with the underhanded dealings of the traitor foxes. Constance would be well able to deal with the situation herself."*
- 2) What gift does Basil give Silent Sam?
  - a. *Basil gives Sam a little knife that, for the tiny squirrel, is a perfectly proportioned sword.*
- 3) Where does Methuselah find the answer to where the 'threshold' in the riddle is?
  - a. *He finds the answer in Sister Germaine's literal translations of Martin's blueprints for the Abbey.*
- 4) Who knows the phases of the moon? Why?
  - a. *Constance does, since 'every badger worth their salt' knows the phases of the moon.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 8**

- 1) How does Cluny counteract Sela's spying?
  - a. *Cluny knows Sela is a spy, so he stops taking her sleeping potions. Then, he talks loudly about some fake plans, so that she will overhear. He also leaves a fake plan written on a piece of paper sticking out from under his pillow where she will surely see it.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 9**

- 1) What happens when Matthias puts Martin's shield in the moon-slot?
  - a. *The moonlight reflects off the shield onto the weather-vane atop the tower.*
- 2) What happens to Jess Squirrel as she climbs down from the weather-vane?
  - a. *Jess is attacked by sparrows.*
- 3) How do the Abbey creatures try to help Jess?
  - a. *The Abbey creatures fire arrows to disperse the sparrows, but not to hurt them. One young sparrow is hit by mistake.*
- 4) What is the outcome of Jess's climb?
  - a. *Jess did not find anything at the top of the weather-vane. She says it looks like something like a sword was there once, but is gone now.*
- 5) Who is Warbeak?
  - a. *Warbeak is the sparrow that was hit by the arrow. She is fierce and rude.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 10**

- 1) How does Sela escape her two guards?
  - a. *Sela leads them through nettles and brambles and makes them uncomfortable and grumpy until they start fighting among themselves, while she slips away unnoticed.*
- 2) What does Constance do at the meeting with Sela?
  - a. *Constance captures Sela and knocks one of the guards out. She takes the plans from Sela and then leaves them both in the woods for the other guard to find.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 11**

- 1) Why does Methuselah think the sparrows might have Martin's sword?

- a. *He remembers that long ago the sparrows bragged of having stolen something valuable from the Abbey, and since they live on the roof, it could have been the sword on the weather-vane.*
- 2) How does Warbeak confirm Methuselah's suspicions?
  - a. *Warbeak threatens to chop Matthias to pieces with King Bull Sparra's big sword.*

## BOOK 2, CHAPTER 12

- 1) Why doesn't Cluny believe the story told by Sela and Fangburn?
  - a. *When Sela and Fangburn are telling their story, none of the details agree.*

## BOOK 2, CHAPTER 13

- 1) How does Matthias tame Warbeak?
  - a. *He offers her bits of candied nuts every time she shows signs of good behavior, and talks to her.*
- 2) Where are Matthias and Warbeak going to go? Why?
  - a. *They are going to go to Warbeak's home kingdom in the rafters to return Warbeak to her people, and for Matthias to seek Martin's sword.*
- 3) Why does Matthias kick Warbeak off the ledge? Does his plan work?
  - a. *Matthias kicks her off the ledge to dangle by her brick shackle to help win her loyalty. Yes. She submits, and swears an oath that she will help him, even though she still doesn't like him much.*
- 4) What is Cluny's new plan to conquer the Abbey?
  - a. *Cluny is planning to tunnel under the Abbey wall.*

## BOOK 2, CHAPTERS 14-23

**VOCABULARY:** fledgling, grandiose, higgledy-piggledy, trepidation, cavernously, dire, berserk, stygian, netherworld

## BOOK 2, CHAPTER 14

- 1) How does Warbeak prove that her oath was real, and she is now pledged to help Matthias? What does Matthias do as a result?
  - a. *Warbeak saves Matthias from falling backwards, and then helps him open the trapdoor. Matthias removes Warbeak's iron collar and shackle as a result, and she says she is now his friend and will continue to help him.*
- 2) What happens when Warbeak and Matthias enter the Sparra territory?
  - a. *Matthias is captured by King Bull Sparra.*

## BOOK 2, CHAPTER 15

- 1) What happens to Sela and Chickenhound?
  - a. *Sela is executed by Cluny's horde. Chickenhound is supposed to be executed too, but survives. He drags himself to the Abbey for help in exchange for information.*
- 2) What does Chickenhound tell the Abbot? Is he trustworthy? How do you know?
  - a. *Chickenhound tells the Abbot that there is no battering ram, but instead, Cluny is going to tunnel into the Abbey. Chickenhound's information is correct, but the fox is not trustworthy, as he laughs to himself about how he will trick the Abbey creatures once he is healed.*

## BOOK 2, CHAPTER 16

- 1) How do Warbeak and Dunwing save Matthias?

- a. *They cry out that Matthias saved Warbeak's life, and beg the King to spare the young mouse.*
- 2) What does Matthias do to trick King Bull Sparra?
  - a. *Matthias pretends to be crazy.*
- 3) What does Dunwing do that shows she is considerate?
  - a. *Dunwing does not put worms or dead insects in Matthias' portion of their dinner.*
- 4) How does Matthias try to bribe King Bull Sparra?
  - a. *Matthias finds a few extra candied nuts in his haversack, and offers them to the King as a gift in exchange for his freedom.*
- 5) What does Dunwing tell Matthias about the sword of Martin?
  - a. *Dunwing says that long ago, one of the Sparra kings stole the sword from the weathervane, but later, it was taken by a 'poisonteeth'—Asmodeus, the adder.*
- 6) What does King Bull Sparra notice about Matthias' appearance that makes him angry?
  - a. *The King notices that Matthias has a sword-belt just like his, and assumes that the mouse must know something about the stolen sword.*

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 17**

- 1) What are Basil and Jess planning to do? Why?
  - a. *Basil and Jess are planning to recover the tapestry of Martin the Warrior. They want to instill some hope and new strength in the Abbey defenders.*
- 2) What is their decoy?
  - a. *Their decoy is one of Friar Hugo's old dishrags.*
- 3) How does Jess distract and trick Cluny while Basil escapes?
  - a. *Jess pretends to be upset and begs Cluny not to hurt her family, if she'll give him the 'tapestry'. She gives him the cloth, which is really the dishrag, while Basil escapes with the real tapestry.*

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 18**

- 1) Explain Dunwing's plan to help Matthias escape.
  - a. *Dunwing plans to get word to Jess Squirrel to meet Matthias with a strong rope, to help him climb down the side of the Abbey to safety. Meanwhile, King Bull Sparra will have been told a false rumor about Asmodeus being dead. He will fly down to see if the sword is there, giving Matthias time to steal the scabbard and escape.*
- 2) How does the plan go?
  - a. *At first, it works, although Matthias has some trouble climbing down. Jess also has trouble, as the wind is very strong and her tail is bushy and keeps getting caught in it. Finally, as Matthias is almost to safety, King Bull Sparra comes flying back, having realized that the snake is not dead. In anger, he attacks Matthias, and the two fall senseless from the wall to the ground below.*

### **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 19**

- 1) What is Chickenhound up to and why is he so pleased with himself?
  - a. *Chickenhound is stealing all kinds of things from the Abbey. He thinks he's outsmarted Cluny and the whole Abbey.*
- 2) Who tries to stop Chickenhound, and what tragically happens?
  - a. *Brother Methuselah tries to stop Chickenhound, who swings his sack of loot at the old mouse's head, killing him instantly.*

- 3) What happens to Chickenhound?
  - a. *Chickenhound hears Constance coming and jumps down into a hole to hide. The hole turns out to be part of Asmodeus' lair, and the snake kills Chickenhound.*
- 4) Who else do the Abbey creatures think is dead?
  - a. *They think Matthias did not survive the fall from the roof.*
- 5) What does Cornflower say about this death?
  - a. *Cornflower says that it was a brave self-sacrifice that Matthias made on behalf of the Abbey and the Order.*
- 6) What has actually happened to Matthias?
  - a. *The Abbey pond broke his fall, so he did not die. Winifred the Otter finds him and brings him to safety.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 20**

No Questions

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 21**

- 1) What causes the extreme pain in Matthias' shoulder?
  - a. *When they fell, King Bull Sparra's beak was left embedded in Matthias' shoulder.*
- 2) How does Basil cheer Matthias up after learning about the death of Methuselah?
  - a. *He tells Matthias that Methuselah wouldn't want Matthias moping about, but would want him to get his strength back and finish their quest.*
- 3) Who is Captain Snow?
  - a. *Captain Snow is an owl that Basil saved from a fallen tree.*
- 4) Why does Basil think Captain Snow might be able to help Matthias?
  - a. *Captain Snow patrols the woods near the old quarry where Asmodeus' main lair is, so Basil thinks he might have some information about the snake.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 22**

- 1) What does Guosim's name stand for?
  - a. *Guerilla Union of Shrews in Mossflower.*
- 2) How do the shrews take turns speaking?
  - a. *The speaker must be holding the black pebble called the speaking stone.*
- 3) Who casts the deciding vote to free Matthias?
  - a. *Log-a-Log, a wise elder, casts the deciding vote.*
- 4) What is the shrews' nickname for Asmodeus?
  - a. *The shrews call Asmodeus 'Old Ice Eyes'.*

## **BOOK 2, CHAPTER 23**

- 1) What does Jess steal from Cluny's army?
  - a. *Jess steals a water-barrel that they'd been using as a drum.*
- 2) How does she plan to use it against them?
  - a. *She plans to fill it with something that she can pour down on the attackers from the walls.*

## **BOOK 3, CHAPTERS 1-15**

**VOCABULARY:** fastidious, opaque, phosphorescent, malcontents, cul-de-sac, lethargy, blight, clement, spate, fiasco, maelstrom, culinary

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 1

- 1) What is Jess and Sam's plan for the attackers at the wall and gate?
  - a. *First, Jess and Sam dump a hornet's nest down on the rats. When they drop the battering ram to run from the hornets, Jess and Sam dump oil on the ram, making it too slick to hold.*
- 2) What is Constance's preoccupation? Why does she want this so badly?
  - a. *Constance has become obsessed with killing Cluny. She believes that if she can get rid of the horde's leader, the rest of them will surrender or run away.*
- 3) How does Constance's plan turn out?
  - a. *Constance uses a huge bow and arrow to shoot at what she thinks is Cluny's silhouette. In reality, it is Cheesethief, dressed up in Cluny's armor. Cheesethief is killed, and Cluny is not.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 2

- 1) Who is the cat that almost swallows Matthias?
  - a. *The cat is Squire Julian Gingevere.*
- 2) Why does he spit him out?
  - a. *He does not like the taste of vermin, so he spits Matthias out.*
- 3) What is Julian's relationship with Captain Snow?
  - a. *Julian and Captain Snow seem to have been friends, but Julian says they quarreled and will never be reconciled.*
- 4) Why doesn't Matthias want to go into Captain Snow's nest to 'talk'?
  - a. *When Matthias peers into Captain Snow's nest, he sees the skeletons of many small animals. Entering the nest would be entering a trap.*
- 5) What is the bet that Matthias and Captain Snow agree upon?
  - a. *Captain Snow bets that Matthias will not defeat Asmodeus. If Matthias does defeat him, Captain Snow will promise to never eat another small animal, and will apologize to Julian. If Matthias does not defeat him, Snow gets to keep Basil's medal.*
- 6) What does Matthias ask of the GUOSIM? How do they respond?
  - a. *Matthias asks the GUOSIM to escort him to the quarry where Asmodeus lives. They riot and refuse, although Log-a-Log says he is ashamed that they will not help Matthias, who is just trying to help them.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 3

- 1) How does Cluny use Cheesethief's death to his own advantage?
  - a. *Cluny pretends he knew about Constance's plan, and used it as an easy way to get rid of Cheesethief, who he says was a traitor. Cluny does this to make his horde think that he knows all the Abbey plans, and that they can't get away with anything.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 4

- 1) How do Matthias and the shrews cross the river?
  - a. *Guosim shows Matthias how to call for the ferryshrew, who helps them across on large floating logs.*
- 2) Who finds the secret entrance into Asmodeus' lair? How?
  - a. *Guosim accidentally falls down the hole that has been disguised in the quarry.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 5

- 1) What does Killconey make out of the old cart? Why?
  - a. *Killconey makes a siege tower, which he and the other rats will use to scale the walls of the Abbey.*
- 2) How do Cornflower and Brother Rufus defeat the first rat that scales the wall?
  - a. *Cornflower sees the rat and alerts Rufus, who accidentally throws his piping hot soup in the rat's face. Cornflower panics and throws the lantern at the siege tower, and it catches fire.*
- 3) Why do the horde think Cluny may have lost his mind?
  - a. *After the fire, Cluny first grows enraged, and then retreats to sit in a dark corner, talking to himself.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 6

- 1) Who accompanies Matthias as he goes to look for Guosim?
  - a. *Log-a-log accompanies Matthias to look for Guosim.*
- 2) What horrible thing fills one of the rooms Matthias finds in the lair?
  - a. *One of the rooms Matthias finds is filled with cast-off snake skins shed by Asmodeus.*
- 3) What has happened to Guosim?
  - a. *Guosim is dead, bitten in the neck by Asmodeus.*
- 4) Why does Matthias need to get the sword out in the open before facing Asmodeus?
  - a. *Matthias does not have room to wield the sword in the lair. Asmodeus would have the advantage.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 7

- 1) How do Constance and the other Abbey-dwellers prepare for Cluny's tunnel?
  - a. *Foremole and his crew listen to the ground, so they can hear the progress and conversations of the diggers. Constance and the others gather huge pots of boiling water to pour down the tunnel once it opens up.*
- 2) How is Cluny acting? What is still bothering him?
  - a. *Cluny is still acting distracted and blank, and the horde thinks he might be losing it. He continues to be plagued by the nightmare of the warrior mouse.*
- 3) What happens when the rats break through into the Abbey from their tunnel?
  - a. *When the rats break through, the Abbey-dwellers pour the boiling water on the attackers, who flee back down the tunnel. Then, they jump on the ground above the tunnel, collapsing it and sealing it off.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 8

- 1) How do Matthias and Log-a-log escape the cul-de-sac in Asmodeus' lair?
  - a. *Matthias uses the sword of Martin to dig a hole through the back wall of the room into the outside world.*
- 2) What does Asmodeus do that almost defeats Matthias? How does Matthias escape this new danger?
  - a. *Asmodeus gets trapped in the tree roots that surround the hole Matthias made, but he uses his hypnotic stare to put Matthias in a trance. Martin the Warrior appears to Matthias to break him out of the trance, and to tell him when to strike. Matthias strikes on command, and severs Asmodeus' head.*



### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 9

- 1) What advice does Julian give to Matthias? Is this good advice? Why?
  - a. *Julian reminds Matthias that the sword of Martin is just a sword. It is not magical, or powerful in and of itself. This is good advice because it tells Matthias that he must be the brave, quick-thinking warrior, and cannot rely on some kind of magical weapon to fight his battles for him. The sword can inspire Matthias to be like Martin, but I cannot make Matthias into Martin magically.*
- 2) Does Captain Snow uphold his end of the bargain?
  - a. *Yes. Although at first he is grumpy about it, he pledges not to eat any more small animals, and apologizes to Julian.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 10

- 1) How does Cluny use the dormice? What does he promise them?
  - a. *Cluny plants the Plumpen in the teams of creatures repairing the Abbey gates and walls. Nobody notices them because they are mice, like many of the other good creatures. Cluny promises Plumpen and the dormice that if he does this for him, he will spare the lives of Plumpen's family.*
- 2) What happens to Plumpen? Does Cluny keep his end of the bargain?
  - a. *After Plumpen betrays the Abbey by opening the gates during the night, one of the rats hits him over the head from behind. No, Cluny did not keep his promise, and never intended to.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 11

No questions.

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 12

- 1) What name does Cluny plan to give the Abbey?
  - a. *Cluny plans to rename the Abbey 'Cluny's Castle'.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 13

- 1) What finally forces Matthias to take a break from his fast pace? Why does he need to slow down?
  - a. *Matthias trips over a root and is forced to stop. He needs to slow down because Log-a-log is old and can't keep up, and because Matthias and Warbeak are both becoming physically exhausted.*
- 2) Who else is helping Matthias rally forces to take to fight Cluny?
  - a. *Log-a-log is bringing the GUOSIM, and Warbeak is going to rally the Sparra to help Matthias.*

### BOOK 3, CHAPTER 14

- 1) What has Cluny done with Constance?
  - a. *Cluny has put Constance in a net, and each time she wakes up, he has his horde beat her into unconsciousness.*
- 2) What happens to Abbot Mortimer?
  - a. *Abbot Mortimer tries to defend some of the hostages, and Cluny hits him repeatedly with his poisoned barb.*
- 3) Who does Cluny think Matthias is at first?
  - a. *Cluny at first thinks Matthias is the warrior mouse from his dream, and/or Martin the Warrior.*

- 4) What does Matthias do to Cluny's tail?
  - a. *Matthias cuts the tip, including the barb, off of Cluny's tail.*
- 5) Where does Cluny wound Matthias?
  - a. *Cluny stabs Matthias in the paw.*
- 6) How does Matthias ultimately defeat Cluny?
  - a. *Matthias cuts the rope on the Joseph Bell and it falls, crushing Cluny beneath it.*
- 7) Who is the new Abbot?
  - a. *Brother Alf is named the new Abbot.*
- 8) What is the new name of Martin's sword?
  - a. *Martin's sword is now called 'Ratdeath'.*
- 9) What happens to Cornflower?
  - a. *As he lays dying, Abbot Mortimer tells Cornflower to make a good wife for Matthias.*

### **BOOK 3, CHAPTER 15**

- 1) Who is the new Redwall recorder?
  - a. *The new recorder is John Churchmouse.*
- 2) Who is Mattimeo?
  - a. *Mattimeo is Matthias and Cornflower's son.*
- 3) What is Warbeak's new hobby?
  - a. *Warbeak is an apprentice to Friar Hugo in the kitchens.*
- 4) What happened to the Joseph Bell?
  - a. *The Joseph Bell was damaged, so it was melted down and cast into two smaller bells, named the Matthias and Methuselah bells.*

# The Secret Garden

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** cholera, crepe, discomfited, moor

- 1) Describe Mary Lennox.
  - a. *She was a sour, spoiled, selfish little girl who was pale and sickly.*
- 2) What did Mary drink that made her sleepy?
  - a. *Wine*
- 3) What was her mother like?
  - a. *She was beautiful and graceful, but she was not much of a mother to her only child.*
- 4) Why would none of the governesses stay very long?
  - a. *Mary would refuse to do what she was told and she would physically fight with them.*

## CHAPTER 2

- 1) Why was Mr. Craven so strange?
  - a. *His back was twisted and his wife had died.*
- 2) How did Mary feel about her parents' deaths?
  - a. *She did not think much about it, because she hardly knew them.*
- 3) Was she excited about living with her uncle?
  - a. *No*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** brougham

- 1) What was the only question Mary asked Mrs. Medlock?
  - a. *"What is a moor?"*
- 2) What kind of reception did she get from her uncle?
  - a. *None—he did not even want to see her.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** obsequious, subservient, treacle, pinafores, humiliation

- 1) How many siblings did Martha have?
  - a. *11*
- 2) What could Mary not do that shocked Martha?
  - a. *Mary could not dress herself.*
- 3) What kind of bird caught Mary's attention?
  - a. *A robin redbreast caught her attention.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** languid

- 1) What were the four good things that had happened to Mary?
  - a. *Her interactions with the robin, her running in the wind, her healthful hunger, her sorrow for someone.*
- 2) What does "wuthering" mean?
  - a. *A hollow, shuddering kind of roar the wind on the moor makes.*
- 3) How did Mrs. Craven die?
  - a. *A tree branch she was sitting upon fell with her.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** brocade, mahout, palanquin

- 1) What did the girl who was wearing green in the portrait hold on her finger?
  - a. *A green parrot*
- 2) What did Mary play with for hours?
  - a. *Little elephant figurines made of ivory.*
- 3) What was the only living thing Mary found in all the rooms she explored?
  - a. *A nest of mice.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** perennial

- 1) How far away was Martha's home?
  - a. *5 miles*
- 2) How often did Martha get a day off?
  - a. *Once a month*
- 3) What did she do on her days off?
  - a. *She walked home to help her mother wash clothes and bake.*
- 4) How many times did Mary run around the gardens?
  - a. *10*

## CHAPTER 8

- 1) Where does Mary decide to keep the key?
  - a. *In her pocket.*
- 2) How many times could Martha count with the skipping rope when she was twelve?
  - a. *500 times*
- 3) How many times could Mary count with the skipping rope at first?
  - a. *20 times*

## CHAPTER 9

- 1) Why did Martha rush off to answer Mrs. Medlock's bell?
  - a. *Martha did not want to answer Mary's question about the crying.*
- 2) What was growing all over the garden that Mary was not certain whether or not it was alive?
  - a. *Roses*
- 3) What did Martha's letter promise to Dickon?
  - a. *That she would tell him stories of elephants, camels, tigers, and men hunting lions.*

## CHAPTER 10

- 1) What did Ben tell Mary to look for to see if the roses were alive?
  - a. *Little brown lumps*
- 2) How did Dickon convince Mary he could keep a secret?
  - a. *He said that if he could not keep a secret, no little animal on the moor would be safe, because he knew where all their homes were hidden and other people would disturb them if he told those secrets.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** exultantly

- 1) What surprised Dickon in the garden?
  - a. *That Mary had been making the "breathing spaces" around the flowers.*

- 2) What does "wick" mean?
  - a. *Alive*
- 3) What did Dickon eat for lunch?
  - a. *A bacon sandwich.*
- 4) What did he plan to give the robin?
  - a. *Fat from the bacon.*
- 5) What did Mary say that surprised him?
  - a. *That she liked only five people.*

## CHAPTER 12

- 1) Who boldly went up to Mr. Craven and spoke with him about Mary?
  - a. *Martha's mother, Mrs. Sowerby*
- 2) When will Mr. Craven go away again and for how long?
  - a. *The next day, until autumn or even the winter.*
- 3) What did Dickon draw for Mary?
  - a. *He drew a bird in a nest.*

## CHAPTER 13

- 1) What is behind the curtain in Colin's room?
  - a. *A portrait of Colin's mother.*
- 2) What is Mary afraid of while talking with Colin?
  - a. *That he will spoil her secret garden, so it won't be a secret any more.*
- 3) How does Mary get Colin to fall asleep?
  - a. *She sings to him soft and low.*

## CHAPTER 14

- 1) What made Colin feel better?
  - a. *Talking and laughing with Mary.*
- 2) What did Colin suspect about Dr. Craven?
  - a. *He suspected that Dr. Craven wanted him to die, so Dr. Craven could inherit Misselthwaite.*
- 3) What did Dr. Craven say was no good for Colin?
  - a. *Excitement*
- 4) What did Colin remind Mary of?
  - a. *A rajah*

## CHAPTER 15

- 1) What kinds of animals did Dickon bring with him to the garden?
  - a. *A fox cub and a crow.*
- 2) Why did Mary and Dickon want to take Colin to the garden?
  - a. *So he would forget his thoughts of death and start thinking about life.*
- 3) In Dickon's opinion, why did Mr. Craven never look at his son when Colin was awake?
  - a. *Because Colin has his mother's eyes, yet his face is miserable. Mr. Craven cannot stand the sadness.*

## CHAPTER 16

### VOCABULARY: contradict, condescend

- 1) Why was Mary unafraid to fight with Colin when everyone else was?
  - a. *She was just as spoiled as he was.*

- 2) What were Mary's presents?
  - a. *Books, games, and writing necessities.*

#### CHAPTER 17

- 1) How did Mary calm Colin?
  - a. *She told him to be quiet and that his hysterics were his own fault and he was not going to die and he did not have a lump on his back.*
- 2) How did Mary get Colin to sleep?
  - a. *She told him about the garden.*

#### CHAPTER 18

- 1) How did Mary get Colin to laugh?
  - a. *She spoke in Yorkshire to him.*
- 2) Whose idea was it to do that?
  - a. *Dickon's*

#### CHAPTER 19

**VOCABULARY:** recluse, austerity

- 1) What did Dickon do in front of Colin that was very special?
  - a. *He fed the lamb.*

#### CHAPTER 20

**VOCABULARY:** menagerie

- 1) What did Mr. Roach fear that Colin might ask him?
  - a. *To cut down all the trees.*
- 2) Besides look around, what did Colin do when he was in the garden?
  - a. *Breathed as deeply as he could.*

#### CHAPTER 21

**VOCABULARY:** harangued

- 1) What turned Colin's attention away from the broken branch?
  - a. *The robin*
- 2) What did Colin do when he was mad about Ben calling him a "cripple?"
  - a. *He stood up on his own two feet.*

#### CHAPTER 22

**VOCABULARY:** fakir, dervishes

- 1) How had Ben been getting into the garden all this time?
  - a. *He had been climbing over the wall.*
- 2) What made Colin laugh?
  - a. *The magic of the garden made him laugh.*

#### CHAPTER 23

**VOCABULARY:** copious

- 1) What does Colin call the force behind his getting better?
  - a. *Magic*
- 2) Colin has lived his entire life thinking negatively—he believes he is sick, and that he is going to die, that people talk about him behind his back, and that his father never wants to look

upon him. He is now intentionally planning to think positively about the things he wants to do—he will constantly tell himself that he can achieve his goals, whatever they may be at the time. Do you think he will succeed? Why?

a. *Answers will vary*

#### CHAPTER 24

- 1) How did Mary and Colin satisfy their hunger?
  - a. *Dickon brought them food from Mrs. Sowerby*
- 2) When was Mrs. Sowerby's special time with Dickon?
  - a. *When he worked his garden.*

#### CHAPTER 25

- 1) What do Mary and Colin do in the portrait gallery?
  - a. *They run and do their exercises.*
- 2) What is now different in Colin's room?
  - a. *The picture of his mother is no longer covered.*

#### CHAPTER 26

- 1) What did Colin wish at the end of the afternoon with Susan Sowerby?
  - a. *That she was his mother.*

#### CHAPTER 27

**VOCABULARY:** hypochondriac, salver, fiords, verdure

- 1) Why did Mr. Craven decide to go home?
  - a. *Susan Sowerby sent him a letter suggesting it.*
- 2) What did Mr. Craven think of the children who met him at Susan Sowerby's cottage?
  - a. *That they were all polite, strong and healthy.*
- 3) What was Colin's meeting with his dad like?
  - a. *Mr. Craven heard noises in the garden he thought had been shut to the world for ten years. He went to the door and it burst open. Colin ran straight into Mr. Craven, winning a race against Mary. Colin actually had to introduce himself: and the whole story came out.*

#### FOR THE AFTERWORD (EXTRA CREDIT)

**VOCABULARY:** derivatives, precociously, automaton, convivial, aesthetically, remuneration, acumen, octogenarian, poignant, ethereal, consumptive, chicanery, meticulously, evocative, quotidian, posthumously, regenerative, surrogate, analogous, totemic

- 1) What works did Mrs. Burnett draw from when she wrote *The Secret Garden*?
  - a. *Jane Eyre and Wuthering Heights*
- 2) What was the greatest difference between those works and *The Secret Garden*?
  - a. *The Secret Garden is optimistic.*
- 3) What did Mrs. Burnett do when someone copied one of her other books and made it into a play without her permission?
  - a. *She made a play out of the story herself, calling it "The Real Little Lord Fauntleroy."*
- 4) What did Mrs. Burnett claim everyone wants?
  - a. *A garden*

# A Single Shard

## CHAPTERS 1-3

**VOCABULARY:** perusal, foraging, dignity, marrow, sluggardly, celadon, parcel, whittle, kiln, precariously, methodically

### CHAPTER 1

- 1) What is the greeting of the well-fed in the village?
  - a. *Have you eaten wee today?*
- 2) Why does Crane-man use a crutch?
  - a. *He was born with a bad leg.*
- 3) What is a jiggeh and how is it used?
  - a. *It is a woven straw basket used for carrying rice.*
- 4) How does Tree-ear get the bag of rice?
  - a. *A jiggeh a farmer was carrying had a hole in it and rice was dribbling out.*
- 5) Cranes are a symbol for what?
  - a. *Long life*
- 6) Why and how does Tree-ear live under a bridge?
  - a. *Tree-ear is orphaned and brought to the village to be with an uncle. The uncle was gone and fever was in the temple so he was brought to Crane-man and stayed.*
- 7) What does Tree-ear sneak to see?
  - a. *He loves to watch the potter Min.*
- 8) For what is the village of Ch'ulp'o known?
  - a. *It is known for its pottery.*

### CHAPTER 2

- 1) Why is Tree-ear beaten by the potter?
  - a. *He had picked up a piece of his pottery and Min thought him a thief.*
- 2) What is Tree-ear able to do for the first time in his life?
  - a. *For the first time he would have real work to do.*
- 3) What is easy to gather dry wood? Explain.
  - a. *He had walk far from the village, chop it up into smaller pieces, stack it in a cart and guide it down the rough and rutted trail*
- 4) Tree-ear has a pain in his hand from a "pillow of fluid". What is that called?
  - a. *It is a blister.*
- 5) How does Crane-man treat Tree-ear's hand?
  - a. *He gathers herbs, makes a paste and puts it in the wound and then wraps it with cloth.*

### CHAPTER 3

- 1) What is Min's attitude toward Tree-ear?
  - a. *He thinks he is almost worthless, but he did not explain exactly what he wanted done.*
- 2) How do Crane-man and Tree-ear get their food?
  - a. *They pick through the rubbish dump and forage in the woods.*
- 3) How is "I cannot pay you" the same as "yes"?
  - a. *He can be paid in learning a skill not money, and Tree-ear wanted that chance.*
- 4) How long was Tree-ear's work day?
  - a. *He worked from temple bell to sundown*



- 5) Explain how he feels about his first meal at Min's house.
  - a. *He thought it was like a feast-day banquet in a palace because he had earned it.*
- 6) What is Crane-man's hope for when he leaves this world?
  - a. *He will have two good legs and no need for crutches.*

## CHAPTERS 4-6

**VOCABULARY:** sieve, sludge, viscous, commission, slip, vessel, dugout, emissary, connoisseur, invective

### CHAPTER 4

- 1) How does Tree-ear help feed Crane-man?
  - a. *He saves half of his meal and shares it with him.*
- 2) When Tree-ear is scolded, how does he feel?
  - a. *He feels shame and resentment.*
- 3) How is celadon glaze made?
  - a. *It is precise proportions of clay, wood ash and water.*
- 4) How does Tree-ear learn the news of the village?
  - a. *He learns by observing the rubbish heaps at each house and listening to snatches of conversations along the road.*
- 5) What causes Min's orders for pottery to grow fewer each year?
  - a. *His insistence on perfection.*
- 6) What is the dream of all potters?
  - a. *All potters wish to get a royal commission.*
- 7) How does Tree-ear thank Min's wife for the meals?
  - a. *To thank her, he pulls weeds in the vegetable patch, seeps the yard and makes sure the water barrel is full.*

### CHAPTER 5

- 1) What does Tree-ear find out about Kang?
  - a. *He finds out that he is making "slip", brick red and white.*
- 2) What is the purpose of a "prunus" vase?
  - a. *Its purpose is to hold a single branch of flowering plum.*
- 3) Where do Crane-man and Tree-ear live in the winter?
  - a. *They live in a dugout vegetable pit.*
- 4) What did Tree-ear spy Kang doing in his shed late at night?
  - a. *He was putting the slip into tiny carved out depressions in the clay.*

### CHAPTER 6

- 1) How did the emissary's impending visit affect the village?
  - a. *They all went to work with their faces tighter.*
- 2) How is Kang's pottery different from the others?
  - a. *It had a design of chrysanthemums in the colors of black and white.*

### CHAPTER 7

- 1) When draining the clay, what happens after about the fifth time?
  - a. *The clay felt different, fine, pliant, smooth, but not quite ready.*
- 2) How does Min compliment Tree-ear on his work on the red and white clay?
  - a. *He says, "You took long enough."*
- 3) How does Tree-ear fall asleep after a long day's work?
  - a. *He falls asleep listening to Crane-man's stories.*

- 4) What are foxes known for in the Korean culture?
  - a. *Foxes are dreaded animals, fiendishly clever and processing evil magic.*
- 5) What happens to Min's pottery?
  - a. *He smashes them all because they were not perfect.*

## CHAPTER 8

- 1) What is Min offered? What does he answer?
  - a. *He is offered a royal commission if he can bring some of his pottery to the capital city. He refuses saying he is too old to make the trip.*
- 2) Where is Tree-ear going? Why?
  - a. *He is going to make the trip to Songdo for Min to thank Min's wife for taking care of him.*
- 3) What advice does Crane-man give Tree-ear about his trip?
  - a. *Your body must think it is only going on one day's journey so your spirit does not grow weary.*
- 4) Why can't Tree-ear learn the potter's trade?
  - a. *By tradition, the trade is inherited from father to son.*

## CHAPTER 9

- 1) What is stronger than "law"?
  - a. *A well-kept tradition is stronger than law.*
- 2) How does Crane-man come to work for Min?
  - a. *He makes the straw container to hold the pottery Tree-ear will take to Songdo.*
- 3) What was a concern of Tree-ear while he would be gone to Songdo?
  - a. *He was concerned about how all the chores would get done and how Crane-man would eat.*
- 4) What are close companions?
  - a. *Pride and foolishness are close companions.*
- 5) What is the gift Tree-ear gives Crane-man? What does Crane-man say to Tree-ear?
  - a. *Tree-ear gives him a clay monkey, and Crane-man answers "I am honored to wear it."*
- 6) When traveling what will be Tree-ear's greatest danger or greatest aid?
  - a. *People.*

## CHAPTERS 10-13

**VOCABULARY:** trepidation, pinioned, courage, shard, exhaustion, brazen, surreptitiously

## CHAPTER 10

- 1) How does Tree-ear make fire?
  - a. *He uses two flint stones.*
- 2) What awakes Tree-ear? Why is he so frightened?
  - a. *He awakes to sounds of an animal and it is a fox.*
- 3) Where does Crane-man ask Tree-ear to stop and visit? Why?
  - a. *The Rock of the Falling Flowers in Puyo. It is a story of bravery and courage.*

## CHAPTER 11

- 1) What is a "toduk-nom"?
  - a. *A bandit who hides in the countryside and robs weary travelers.*
- 2) What did the robbers do?
  - a. *They take all of Tree-ear's coins and throw the pottery off the cliff.*

- 3) What does Tree-ear find at the bottom of the cliff?
  - a. *He finds that both vases have been broken but Tree-ear recovers one large piece, a single shard, and continues his journey.*
- 4) Crane-man's words came back to him clearly. What does he say about courage?
  - a. *"Leaping into death is not the only way to show courage."*
- 5) What does it mean "to hesitate is to doubt"?
  - a. *If you think too long you might change your mind on a decision already made.*

## CHAPTER 12

- 1) What does Tree-ear imagine about his boyhood?
  - a. *He imagines that perhaps he had a mother who had comforted him when he cried.*
- 2) How does Tree-ear's manner say more than words?
  - a. *His manner (body language) shows that he knows he is in the right to be there and ask for a meeting.*
- 3) How does Tree-ear express his determination to speak only to Emissary Kim?
  - a. *He says he will wait for the convenience of Emissary Kim.*
- 4) What does Emissary Kim give Tree-ear? What does he give Min?
  - a. *He gives Tree-ear lodging and a boat ride home and gives Min a royal commission.*

## CHAPTER 13

- 1) What happens to Crane-man?
  - a. *Crane-man falls off a bridge and has a heart attack and dies.*
- 2) How does Tree-ear feel about it?
  - a. *He is greatly saddened, beyond speech.*
- 3) What is Tree-ear's hope for Crane-man?
  - a. *He hopes he is traveling with his two good legs.*
- 4) What is Hyung-pil's happiness for the future?
  - a. *He will have a wheel of his own, he gets to live with Min and Ajima, has a new name, and dreams of the perfect design for a prunus vase.*

# Swiss Family Robinson

## INTRODUCTION

**VOCABULARY:** asperity, disillusionment, vocation, promulgate, bourgeois

## CHAPTER I

**VOCABULARY:** supplicated, deign, perceive, melancholy, firkins, tinging, abate, conveyance, exhortation, auger, perplexity, bungle, tranquil

- 1) What did the family do together after the ship struck the rocks?
  - a. *They prayed together.*
- 2) Name some of the things the family members found while scavenging the ship.
  - a. *Mrs. Robinson found livestock. Franz found fish hooks. Fritz found armaments. Ernest found tools. Jack found two mastiffs.*
- 3) How did Mr. Robinson make a raft?
  - a. *He built one out of four casks.*
- 4) Why did Mrs. Robinson change her clothes?
  - a. *A dress would be more difficult to swim in.*

## CHAPTER II

**VOCABULARY:** audacious, vestiges, sagacity, fissure, tenter-hooks, scullion, subsistence, succour

- 1) What was clamped to Jack's leg, and what did they plan to do with it?
  - a. *A large lobster: they planned to eat it.*
- 2) What did they use for spoons?
  - a. *Oyster shells*
- 3) What did Fritz find?
  - a. *An Agouti, which looked similar to a sucking pig.*
- 4) What did Ernest find in the crevices of rocks that his father said he should have brought back with him?
  - a. *Salt*

## CHAPTER III

**VOCABULARY:** ascended, verdure, league, palate, husband, intricate, wens, ecstasy, vexation, ardent, sumptuous, endeavoring, promontory, variegated, glutinous, repast, stratagem

- 1) What did Mr. Robinson and Fritz do with the gourds?
  - a. *They cut them and shaped them into dishes, bowls, and cups.*
- 2) Why were Mr. Robinson and Fritz excited about a few sticks?
  - a. *They were sugar cane.*
- 3) How did Mr. Robinson make the monkeys work for him?
  - a. *He threw stones at the monkeys in the trees. They imitated him by throwing coconuts down at him. In this way, he and Fritz received quite a few coconuts from the monkeys.*

## CHAPTER IV

**VOCABULARY:** galled, acquisition, compunction, diminution, suffocation, encumbrance, ludicrous, protege, indispensable, adjourned, exhilarating, serenity, vigilant, sallied, apprehended

- 1) Why did Fritz bring a baby monkey back, and how did he do it?

- a. *Turk attacked, killed, and ate the baby monkey's mother. He ended up tying the monkey to the dog's back so it would not interfere with the other things Fritz was carrying.*
- 2) What had Mrs. Robinson prepared while Mr. Robinson was gone?
  - a. *A kitchen of sorts along with a feast of a roasted goose and side items from the ship*
- 3) Why wasn't that night a peaceful night?
  - a. *Jackals came on the attack, and they had to defend themselves.*

## CHAPTER V

**VOCABULARY:** peevisness, acquit, concerted, contrivance, remnant, Vandals, pillage

- 1) How were Fritz and Mr. Robinson to communicate with the rest of the family when they went to the ship?
  - a. *They used signal flags with gunshots planned if there was an emergency.*
- 2) What was the first thing Fritz thought they should do once they were aboard the wrecked vessel?
  - a. *Make a sail for their raft.*
- 3) What had happened to most of the livestock during the voyage?
  - a. *They had died or been killed.*

## CHAPTER VI

**VOCABULARY:** raillery, accouterments

- 1) How did they get the livestock off the wrecked ship?
  - a. *They made life belts out of cork, tins, ropes, and casks.*
- 2) Which animal was the hardest to get off the ship?
  - a. *The pig*
- 3) What dangerous thing happened on the way back from the ship?
  - a. *How was disaster avoided? A shark tried to attack a sheep, but Fritz shot it.*
- 4) What kind of meal did they eat when they got back to camp?
  - a. *Ham, turtle eggs, and cheese*

## CHAPTER VII

**VOCABULARY:** malicious, dissenting, carbine, inferred, prodigious, brache (22.5 inches), predilection, verdant, Elysium

- 1) Why did Mrs. Robinson go a different way than her husband on the other side of the river?
  - a. *The grass was too tall and thick for the young boys.*
- 2) What was special about the trees Mrs. Robinson found?
  - a. *They were enormous, large enough for the family to live in.*
- 3) How did they find the turtle's eggs?
  - a. *Flora, the dog, was digging them up and eating them.*

## CHAPTER VIII

**VOCABULARY:** asylum, perfidious, voracity, dispersed, expeditiously

- 1) What brought the great many birds to the seashore?
  - a. *The shark carcass*
- 2) How did Mr. Robinson and the older boys get back to camp in such a short time when they were supposed to be collecting lots of wood from the wrecked vessel?
  - a. *They stopped at a nearby island to see why so many birds had collected there, and found enough wood to build their bridge.*

- 3) What did Mr. Robinson use to get the long support beams across the river?  
a. *A pulley and the donkey and cow.*

#### CHAPTER IX

**VOCABULARY:** adjutant, patriarchal, formidable, destitute, perforated

- 1) What animal made the dogs howl in pain?  
a. *A porcupine*
- 2) How did Mr. Robinson make new needles for Mrs. Robinson?  
a. *He fashioned them from the porcupine quills, using a hot nail to poke a hole in one end.*
- 3) What was Franz eating that his mother feared were poisonous?  
a. *Figs*
- 4) What did the boys kill that could have eaten the birds in the night?  
a. *A tiger*

#### CHAPTER X

**VOCABULARY:** extricated

- 1) How did Mr. Robinson get the ropes for the ladder over the lowest branch of the tall tree?  
a. *He fashioned arrows out of reeds, porcupine quills and flamingo feathers. He made a bow from bamboo and twine. Then he shot the rope over the tree branch.*

#### CHAPTER XI

**VOCABULARY:** aperture, foible

- 1) In what order did the family members ascend the ladder into the tree house?  
a. *The three eldest boys went first, followed by Mrs. Robinson, and Mr. Robinson came up last with the youngest on his back.*
- 2) How high in the air was their new home?  
a. *46 feet*
- 3) Why did Mr. Robinson loosen the bottom ropes of the ladder before he ascended it for the night?  
a. *So he could pull it up to the height of the family.*
- 4) Who guarded the family from below while they slept in the tree the first night?  
a. *The dogs*

#### CHAPTER XII

**VOCABULARY:** obscurity, concord, rendered, beneficent, consecration, probation, zealous, benediction

- 1) What did the family do on Sunday?  
a. *They rested, listened to a parable recited by Mr. Robinson, did quiet things*
- 2) Why was Mr. Robinson glad the boys wanted to learn about arrows?  
a. *He foresaw an end to their gun powder, and he knew they would need other means by which to protect themselves and kill food.*
- 3) What did you think of Mr. Robinson's parable?  
a. *Answers will vary*

#### CHAPTER XIII

**VOCABULARY:** incessantly, quiver, sonorous

- 1) What method did the Robinson's use to name places around the island?  
a. *They named the places after events that occurred there and animals found there.*

- 2) When there is disagreement, who settles matters?
  - a. *Mr. Robinson*

#### CHAPTER XIV

**VOCABULARY:** succulent

- 1) Why was Mr. Robinson excited about the karatas plants they found?
  - a. *It has many uses, including making thread to salve and tinder to bait.*
- 2) What did Mrs. Robinson bring back with her?
  - a. *Butter*

#### CHAPTER XV

**VOCABULARY:** indolent, frugal

- 1) What was in the chest?
  - a. *Sailor's clothing*

#### CHAPTER XVI

**VOCABULARY:** quadruped, notwithstanding, salutations

- 1) How did Mr. Robinson identify the kangaroo?
  - a. *He took all the classification steps: How many legs does it have? Is it a "sucking" animal? What kind of teeth does it have? Etc.*
- 2) What refreshment does Mr. Robinson take while Ernest fills the baskets with salt?
  - a. *A bath*

#### CHAPTER XVII

**VOCABULARY:** commodious, appendages, opulent, pigs, farrier

- 1) What did Mr. Robinson find that made him the happiest while on the wreck?
  - a. *A chest full of fruit tree cuttings.*

#### CHAPTER XVIII

**VOCABULARY:** agitated, mortification, windlass, conjured, pernicious

- 1) What animal brought Mr. Robinson and Fritz to the shore?
  - a. *A tortoise*
- 2) What did they do with the animal once they were on shore?
  - a. *They killed it, cooked it, ate it, then planned to use the shell as a water trough.*
- 3) What big surprise did Mrs. Robinson have waiting for Mr. Robinson?
  - a. *She found some wine.*

#### CHAPTER XIX

**VOCABULARY:** loitering, appurtenances, Pollard

- 1) What did they do with the manioc root?
  - a. *They made flour to make bread.*
- 2) What new trade did Mr. Robinson teach the boys?
  - a. *How to be bakers.*
- 3) Did Mrs. Robinson expect his experiment to be a success?
  - a. *No*
- 4) Was Mr. Robinson's experiment successful?
  - a. *Yes*

## CHAPTER XX

**VOCABULARY:** cassava, ardor, pinnacle, regale, coadjutor, amiable

- 1) How did they find room to build the pinnacle?
  - a. *They chopped down walls.*
- 2) How did they get the pinnacle out of the wreck?
  - a. *Mr. Robinson blew a hole through the wreck on one side.*
- 3) What had Mrs. Robinson been doing while the men folk were away?
  - a. *Planting a vegetable garden.*
- 4) What is Mrs. Robinson's first name?
  - a. *Elizabeth*

## CHAPTER XXI

**VOCABULARY:** solicitude, fathom, dexterity, phenomena, conduit, incisions, sufficient, delirious

- 1) In addition to all the work Mr. Robinson was having them do, what did he want the boys to do?
  - a. *Exercise*
- 2) What was the supposed crocodile?
  - a. *An iguana*
- 3) What was the supposed wild boar?
  - a. *The sow from the ship.*

## CHAPTER XXII

**VOCABULARY:** exquisite, coagulate

- 1) What did Fritz do that caused many birds to chase after him?
  - a. *He removed a small parrot from its nest.*
- 2) What does Mr. Robinson plan to do with the India Rubber sap Fritz has found?
  - a. *Try to make water proof boots for the family.*
- 3) What was the ceremony like that Mr. Robinson and Fritz observed on the way back home?
  - a. *Enjoying a sugar cane apiece.*

## CHAPTER XXIII

**VOCABULARY:** importuned, supersede, peculiar

- 1) What did the family make out of the Myrica Cerifera berries, which were white with a wax-like appearance?
  - a. *Candles*
- 2) Mr. Robinson makes everything he tries sound easy to do. Does that seem realistic to you? Why or why not?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 3) After they made the last trip to the shipwreck, what did Mr. Robinson do to the ship?
  - a. *He blew it up.*

## CHAPTER XXIV

**VOCABULARY:** capacious, interspersed, ravishing, precipice, terrestrial, disposition, palpitating, subsided, interposed, stricture, docile

- 1) When Mr. Robinson was searching for the runaway donkey, what did he stumble across?
  - a. *A herd of buffalo.*
- 2) Why did the buffalo charge?
  - a. *The dogs were attacking a buffalo calf.*



- 3) What did Jack plan to do with the bamboo?
  - a. *Make candlesticks for his mother.*
- 4) What animal replaced the donkey when they could not find it?
  - a. *The buffalo calf*

#### CHAPTER XXV

**VOCABULARY:** diligent, prostrate, farinaceous, ligneous, procured, deviate, vanguard, promiscuously, supine, jargon, inure, sanguinary, tractable, allay

- 1) Why couldn't they bring the sow back with them?
  - a. *She had just given birth to a litter of piglets.*
- 2) What did Mr. Robinson plan to do with the hollowed out tree?
  - a. *Make pipes to bring water.*

#### CHAPTER XXVI

**VOCABULARY:** requisite, fumigation, desisted, reconciled, torpid, vanquished, transverse, orifice, indefatigable, reiterated, interstices, contiguous, turbid

- 1) How and where did they make stairs for the tree house?
  - a. *They smoked the resident bees out of the trunk and gave them a new home, keeping the honey and wax for themselves. Then they built the stairs from planks from the shipwreck and a center- post tree within the trunk of the main tree.*
- 2) What were the waterproof boots made of?
  - a. *Caoutchouc & buffalo hide*
- 3) How did they bring water to the tree house?
  - a. *They made pipes from bamboo.*

#### CHAPTER XXVII

**VOCABULARY:** gamut, provender

- 1) What did the donkey bring back?
  - a. *An onager*
- 2) How were they going to make a shelter for their livestock?
  - a. *They were going to use the root system of the tree house.*

#### CHAPTER XXVIII

**VOCABULARY:** harbinger

- 1) Why was Mrs. Robinson so excited about the flax?
  - a. *She could make them all new clothes from it.*
- 2) Why couldn't the Robinsons remain in their tree home?
  - a. *The rainy season deluged them and all their possessions with water.*
- 3) Where did they go?
  - a. *Into the stable with the animals.*
- 4) Why did they refrain from lighting fires?
  - a. *Their stable was not ventilated well.*

#### CHAPTER XXIX

**VOCABULARY:** benign, assiduous, mephitic, entablatures, sagacious

- 1) When they were working to hollow out a cave, what did they find that was delightful?
  - a. *They had opened a passage to a very large, natural cave.*
- 2) What happened to Mr. Robinson when he first looked into the cave?

- a. *He breathed in poisonous gases from the stagnant air.*
- 3) What did they do to fix the problem?
  - a. *They shot off some signal rockets and burned hay in there until the air was clear.*
- 4) What were the "brilliant crystals?"
  - a. *Rock salt*

#### CHAPTER XXX

**VOCABULARY:** tenement

- 1) How many bedrooms did their cave home have?
  - a. *2*
- 2) What did they do with the turtles?
  - a. *They tie them to the shore.*

#### CHAPTER XXXI

**VOCABULARY:** gypsum, emulation, obtruded, salubrity, victuals

- 1) What agitated the sea and what did they do about it?
  - a. *Fish agitated the sea and so they caught as many fish as they could.*
- 2) What did they find that looked as though it were snow covered?
  - a. *Cotton plants*
- 3) What did the eagle do when all the thieving animals were fleeing?
  - a. *It captured a bustard.*

#### CHAPTER XXXII

**VOCABULARY:** purveyors, limpid, azure, diversified, jocosely

- 1) What did they put on the cave walls?
  - a. *Plaster made from the gypsum they had found.*
- 2) How did they make their carpets?
  - a. *They placed goat hair and wool on a sail cloth, doused it with watered down glue, rolled the whole thing up, beat it, unrolled it, and dried it in the sun.*
- 3) What brought tears to Mr. Robinson's eyes?
  - a. *A view that reminded him of Switzerland.*

#### CHAPTER XXXIII

**VOCABULARY:** augmented, equestrian, harangue, felicity

- 1) How did Francis surprise everyone?
  - a. *He rode a young bull with great skill.*
- 2) Who received what prizes?
  - a. *Fritz: a rifle and a hunting knife: Ernest: a gold watch: Jack: spurs and a riding whip: Franz: a pair of stirrups and a driving whip: Mrs Robinson: a lady's work box.*

#### CHAPTER XXXIV

**VOCABULARY:** calabash, superfluous, somerset, expeditious, consternation, auxiliary, conjecture, flambeaux

- 1) How did the monkeys obtain the monkey root?
  - a. *They grasped it with their teeth, and then they violently turned somersets.*
- 2) How did they capture or kill the birds?
  - a. *They coated sticks with a sticky substance to snare the birds. Later, they attracted them with fire and hit them with sticks.*

## CHAPTER XXXV

**VOCABULARY:** edifice, grotto, respire

- 1) What was Mr. Robinson's secret for making the doves want to stay in the dove cot and to bring their mates?
  - a. *Anise oil*
- 2) What did they line the dove cot's walls with?
  - a. *Plaster*
- 3) Why did they do that?
  - a. *To keep down the humidity.*
- 4) Which boy did not believe their father was a sorcerer to make the doves come back?
  - a. *Ernest*

## CHAPTER XXXVI

**VOCABULARY:** diverted, monotony, hummock, facetiously, cavalcades

- 1) Who saved Jack from being trapped in the swamp?
  - a. *His own resourcefulness and his pet jackal.*
- 2) What did Mr. Robinson's plan to do with the little sticks?
  - a. *He planned to make a loom.*

## CHAPTER XXXVII

**VOCABULARY:** exigencies, ennui, resplendent

- 1) How did they get more light in the grotto?
  - a. *They hoisted a lantern from the ship in the middle of it, and the crystal in the walls reflected the light nicely.*
- 2) What was the main subject everyone studied during the second rainy season?
  - a. *Languages*

## CHAPTER XXXVIII

**VOCABULARY:** dissipated

- 1) Who first spotted the whale?
  - a) *Fritz*
- 2) What else did the children find?
  - a) *Coral*
- 3) What was Mr. Robinson enchanted about?
  - a) *His wife wanted to visit the whale with him.*

## CHAPTER XXXIX

**VOCABULARY:** habiliments

- 1) What did Mr. Robinson intend to do with the whale intestines?
  - a. *Turn them into vessels with which to hold the oil.*
- 2) Who were the robbers?
  - a. *birds*

## CHAPTER XL

**VOCABULARY:** approbation, viand

- 1) What did the Robinson family do with the whale fat?
  - a. *Made oil*

- 2) What kind of machine did Mr. Robinson make after the whale work was done?
  - a. *A rowing machine*
- 3) What did Jack find while his dad was planting roots?
  - a. *Whale bones*

#### CHAPTER XLII

**VOCABULARY:** sedentary, palanquin, phlegmatic

- 1) What did Fritz see as the family worked on wicker furniture?
  - a. *A snake*
- 2) What happened to Grizzle?
  - a. *He was eaten by the boa constrictor.*

#### CHAPTER XLIII

- 1) Who was "the Conqueror of Rats"?
  - a. *Ernest*
- 2) What did the Robinson men find while looking for snakes, and what did it contain?
  - a. *A cave full of fuller's earth and rock crystal.*
- 3) What did Ernest find while the others were in the cave?
  - a. *An eel*
- 4) What do people do with "fuller's earth"?
  - a. *Made soap*
- 5) What did Franz kill in the woods?
  - a. *A cabiai*
- 6) What did Ernest find while the others were looking at Franz's kill?
  - a. *Beaver Rats*

#### CHAPTER XLIII

**VOCABULARY:** imperturbable, combustibles, incredulity, olfactory, unequivocal

- 1) How many animals did the Robinson men bring home from their tip through the sugar cane?
  - a. *nine*
- 2) How did the Robinsons keep their meat edible without a refrigerator?
  - a. *By curing/smoking it*
- 3) Who roasted one of the otaheitans?
  - a. *Fritz*

#### CHAPTER XLIV

**VOCABULARY:** savanna, reconnoiter, confluence

- 1) What did the Robinson men see as they rested after crossing the plain?
  - a. *Ostriches*
- 2) What did Knips and the dogs find when they ran off?
  - a. *They found a pool of water and a mountain stream.*
- 3) Who killed the ostrich?
  - a. *The eagle*
- 4) What were the ostrich eggs like?
  - a. *They were the size of an infant's head and weighed about three pounds each.*
- 5) What did the boys want to do with the eggs?
  - a. *Take them home, artificially hatch the eggs, and raise ostriches*

## CHAPTER XLV

- 1) What made Ernest run for his life, dropping his gun as he went?
  - a. *Two large bears*
- 2) What did Mr. Robinson do about it?
  - a. *He and Fritz stood firm and shot at them.*
- 3) What did they do with their defeated enemies?
  - a. *They hid them under thorns in the cave.*

## CHAPTER XLVI

**VOCABULARY:** currying, complaisant, devolved

- 1) Why did Mr. Robinson not want the rabbits to live in their territory?
  - a. *They multiply very quickly.*
- 2) What did the boys want to do with the rabbits and the fawns?
  - a. *Put them on Shark or Whale island.*
- 3) Why were Jack's cheeks swollen?
  - a. *He had tangled with a colony of bees.*
- 4) What made Mr. Robinson think that their island might be inhabited after all?
  - a. *The cuckoo bird showed the boys where a nest of bees lay hidden, which it must have been trained to do.*

## CHAPTER XLVII

**VOCABULARY:** inanimate, ligature, augury, refractory, balsamic

- 1) What two things did Mr. Robinson bring back from the desert?
  - a. *Ostrich eggs and an ostrich*
- 2) What very useful plant did Mr. Robinson find near the defile?
  - a. *Vanilla*
- 3) What was Mr. Robinson planning to do with the poison?
  - a. *Kill nuisance monkeys and cure/tan animal skins, so insects would not ruin them.*

## CHAPTER XLVIII

**VOCABULARY:** dilapidated

- 1) Why did Mr. Robinson tie the ostrich between the buffalo and Grumble?
  - a. *To break him for riding.*
- 2) How did they get the ostrich to obey directional commands?
  - a. *They used a hood that allowed them to control the light the bird could see.*
- 3) What did Mr. Robinson make that everyone wanted?
  - a. *Hats*
- 4) What did Mr. Robinson do with the porcelain?
  - a. *He made kitchen utensils.*

## CHAPTER XLIX

**VOCABULARY:** impervious, hermetically, wont, emancipation

- 1) What did Fritz say he wanted more than anything?
  - a. *A cajack*
- 2) What did Mrs. Robinson make for Fritz?
  - a. *A swimming suit*
- 3) What was the "air chimney" used for?
  - a. *Breathing under water.*

- 4) What happened to the manioc and potato fields?
  - a. *Pigs despoiled them.*

#### CHAPTER L

**VOCABULARY:** vaunting

- 1) What did the boys bring back that Mrs. Robinson planted with care?
  - a. *Cinnamon*
- 2) What did the family use to thresh their grain?
  - a. *The animals*
- 3) Which nationality did Mr. Robinson declare "averse to work?"
  - a. *Italian*

#### CHAPTER LI

**VOCABULARY:** evolution, adroit, redoubtable, articulate

- 1) What animal did Fritz kill while he was out to sea?
  - a. *A walrus*
- 2) What caused Fritz and his mother to pray incessantly on the beach?
  - a. *A hurricane came up unexpectedly while Mr. Robinson and the other boys were still out in the canoe.*
- 3) What did Mr. Robinson do to the bridge and why did he do it?
  - a. *He made a drawbridge because the pigs were coming across on the support beams.*

#### CHAPTER LII

**VOCABULARY:** maniacal, enigma, intrepidity, inquietude

- 1) How did the parents get news of what the boys were doing?
  - a. *By "pigeon post."*
- 2) What animal killed the sheep?
  - a. *A hyena*
- 3) Why did Mr. Robinson hurry to the defile?
  - a. *The boys requested his aid by pigeon post.*
- 4) What animals trampled their place in the defile?
  - a. *Elephants*

#### CHAPTER LIII

**VOCABULARY:** viscous, insipid, propagated

- 1) Why couldn't Mrs. Robinson plant the banana seeds?
  - a. *They did not have any seeds, they are propagated by cuttings.*
- 2) What things did Fritz see when he went out alone on his cajack?
  - a. *Elephants, panthers, hippopotamus, alligators, and crocodiles*
- 3) What plant did they find whose seeds were bitter but is used to make one of the most delicious treats in the world, and what is that treat called?
  - a. *Cacao/chocolate*

#### CHAPTER LIV

**VOCABULARY:** obliterated, indigenous, scion, heifer, corporeal

- 1) How have the Robinson's crops of apples fared?
  - a. *Poorly*
- 2) How have the bees fared?

- a. *They are thriving*
- 3) What two vines are entwined at the entrance of Felsenheim?
  - a. *Vanilla and peppers*
- 4) What did Mr. Robinson wish for his children?
  - a. *That they would not die in solitude.*

#### CHAPTER LV

**VOCABULARY:** counterpoise, rendezvous, portico

- 1) Where did Fritz find the edible nests?
  - a. *High in the walls of a cavern.*
- 2) How did he receive the note from the English sailor?
  - a. *It was written on a piece of linen and tied to the leg of an albatross.*
- 3) Why didn't Fritz tell the whole family about the note?
  - a. *He did not want them to get their hopes up only to be disappointed.*

#### CHAPTER LVI

**VOCABULARY:** osseous, vidette

- 1) What attacked Jack?
  - a. *An African Boar*
- 2) What had the creature been eating?
  - a. *Truffles*

#### CHAPTER LVII

**VOCABULARY:** menageries, effluvia

- 1) What came after the carcass near the fire?
  - a. *Two lions*
- 2) What kind of Animal did Mr. Robinson think was a rock?
  - a. *A whale*
- 3) Who was on the shore dressed as a savage?
  - a. *Fritz*

#### CHAPTER LVIII

- 1) Who did Fritz find?
  - a. *Emily*
- 2) How long had she lived alone on the island?
  - a. *Three years*

#### CHAPTER LIX

**VOCABULARY:** equilibrium, osiers, sojourn

- 1) What kind of animal attacked Fritz on water?
  - a. *An alligator*
- 2) What did Fritz say balanced this animal's ferocity?
  - a. *Its natural laziness.*
- 3) What kind of animal attacked Fritz on land?
  - a. *A tiger*
- 4) What saved him?
  - a. *His faithful eagle and his gun.*

## CHAPTER LX

**VOCABULARY:** proxy

- 1) Why could Miss Emily Montrose hold such intelligent conversation?
  - a. *She had had a "semi-masculine" education.*
- 2) Where were Miss Montrose's parents?
  - a. *Her mother had died, and her father had had to take a different ship.*
- 3) What had Miss Montrose trained to bring her food?
  - a. *A cormorant (bird)*

## CHAPTER LXI

**VOCABULARY:** corsair, ostentatiously

- 1) What happened when the boys fired their guns?
  - a. *Three answering shots were fired from the sea.*
- 2) What did Mr. Robinson find after the hurricane ended?
  - a. *An English brig-of-war ship.*
- 3) Who wanted to stay when they had the chance to go to Europe?
  - a. *Ernest, Jack, Mr. & Mrs Wolston, and the Wolston's younger daughter.*

## AFTERWORD

**VOCABULARY:** immutable, omniscience, anomalies, transcendental, myriad, deferential



# Where the Red Fern Grows

## CHAPTERS 1 & 2

**VOCABULARY:** coonhound, dormant, commotion, turpentine

### CHAPTER 1

- 1) What kind of day was the day of the dog fight?
  - a. *A perfect day*
- 2) What was the dog's name?
  - a. *"Buddie"*
- 3) What did his collar look like?
  - a. *It was a strip of leather with nail holes punched into the ends and held together with bailing wire. The dog's name was scratched into the leather.*
- 4) What does the man do with the red hound dog when he gets him home?
  - a. *He bathes him and feeds him all his meat and milk.*
- 5) What does the man do when the dog wants to leave? Why?
  - a. *He lets him go because it would be a sin to keep a dog like that cooped up.*
- 6) What was on the man's mantel?
  - a. *Two trophies*

### CHAPTER 2

- 1) How much did Billy's father say two hound dogs would cost?
  - a. *\$75*
- 2) What did Billy's father say he would buy if he had that much money?
  - a. *A mule*
- 3) What did Billy's father buy for him that helped his ailing heart for a while?
  - a. *Traps*
- 4) What was the first animal Billy caught?
  - a. *The cat, Samie*
- 5) What caused Billy to stay up most nights throughout hunting season?
  - a. *Hearing a blood hound baying.*

### CHAPTER 3

- 1) Why does Billy enjoy going to a fisherman's camp after the fishermen leave?
  - a. *He finds all sorts of things.*
- 2) How much money did the advertisement say the two dogs Billy wanted would cost?
  - a. *\$50*
- 3) How much money did Billy start with in order to save up for the dogs?
  - a. *23 cents*
- 4) What did he put the money in?
  - a. *A K.C. Baking Powder can.*
- 5) How did Billy earn the money for the dogs?
  - a. *He picks and sells berries, catches bait for fishermen and sells it to them, hawks vegetables to the fishermen.*
- 6) Why did Billy's grandfather give him a whole sack full of his best candy?
  - a. *Because he was so very proud of Billy for earning and saving all that money.*

## CHAPTER 4

- 1) How long would Billy have had to wait for a ride into town?
  - a. *A week*
- 2) Was he doing right when he left home without permission?
  - a. *No*
- 3) What scared him most when he came to town?
  - a. *A sheriff*
- 4) What did he buy?
  - a. *Overalls for his dad, cloth for his mom and sisters, and candy.*
- 5) What was the man doing in his yard?
  - a. *Cutting the grass.*
- 6) What did the boys in the schoolyard call Billy?
  - a. *A hillbilly*
- 7) Where does Billy go to school?
  - a. *At home*
- 8) What did he do that made the old lady laugh?
  - a. *He flew out of the slide.*

## CHAPTER 5

### VOCABULARY: vicious

- 1) Did the stationmaster give Billy any trouble when he came to pick up the puppies?
  - a. *No*
- 2) How did Billy carry the pups?
  - a. *In a gunny sack.*
- 3) What did people do as Billy walked down the street with his dogs?
  - a. *They laughed at him.*
- 4) What did the bully do to finally make Billy fight him?
  - a. *The bully pulled one of the puppy's ears.*
- 5) What did the sheriff do after he got all the boys off Billy?
  - a. *He talked with him a while, then he bought him a soda pop.*
- 6) What did the boy puppy do as the mountain lion screamed?
  - a. *He howled at her.*
- 7) Did Billy and his puppies sleep well their first night together?
  - a. *no*

### VOCABULARY CHAPTERS 6 & 7: peculiarity, persistence

## CHAPTER 6

- 1) How did Billy decide on the names he chose for Old Dan and Little Ann?
  - a. *He saw Dan and Ann carved into a tree where he had prayed and had found the ad for the puppies.*
- 2) What happened to Billy when he finally got home?
  - a. *His parents were glad he made it home safely.*
- 3) *Where did the pups spend the night?*
  - a. *In the corn crib.*
- 4) What were the girls most anxious to hear about?
  - a. *The soda pop and the school.*
- 5) What did Billy's parents most want for their children?
  - a. *To move in town so the kids could get an education.*

- 6) What were the dogs' collars like?
  - a. *It was a strip of leather with nail holes punched into the ends and held together with bailing wire. The dogs' names were scratched into the leather.*

## CHAPTER 7

- 1) Describe the trap that caught Billy's first 'coon and how it worked.
  - a. *He bored a hole in a log, placed a shiny piece of tin at the bottom, and drove nails in at a slant.  
The raccoon, attracted to the shiny object, would put his hand in the hole and grab the tin. With his hand enlarged by holding the object, he would be trapped.*
- 2) What would the logical way be for the coon to free itself?
  - a. *It just had to let go of the object.*
- 3) What did the puppies do when they saw the trapped raccoon?
  - a. *They tried to get at it.*
- 4) How was Old Dan saved?
  - a. *Little Ann came in from behind.*
- 5) What did Mrs. Coleman think happened when Billy came up to share the good news about is trapping the 'coon?
  - a. *She thought he'd been bitten by a rattlesnake.*
- 6) What did Billy do with the rest of his traps once the raccoon was caught?
  - a. *He disassembled them.*
- 7) How did Billy train the dogs with the skin?
  - a. *He dragged it along to make a trail then his sister would release the dogs.*
- 8) Which dog never overran the trail?
  - a. *Little Ann*

## CHAPTER 8

- 1) What did Billy carry with him when he left with the dogs to hunt?
  - a. *An axe and a lantern*
- 2) What were the last words he heard as he left to go hunting?
  - a. *"Be careful, Billy, and don't stay out too late."*
- 3) What did Billy do when the dogs lost the trail?
  - a. *He scolded them.*
- 4) What animal came running at Billy as it was chased by the dogs?
  - a. *A raccoon*
- 5) Why wasn't Billy happy when he saw that the dogs had definitely treed their first live raccoon?
  - a. *The raccoon lived in a giant of a tree.*
- 6) What did Billy's father say when Billy told him he had made an agreement with his dogs?
  - a. *"If a man's word is no good, he's no good himself."*

## CHAPTER 9

### VOCABULARY: liniment, civet

- 1) What is grandpa's reaction when Billy says he's ready to give up?
  - a. *He tells him never to start something he can't finish.*
- 2) How does Billy's mother feel about his 'coon hunting?
  - a. *She is worried all the time.*
- 3) How does Billy's father treat him now?
  - a. *Like a man.*

- 4) How does Billy feel as he climbs down from Grandpa's buggy to go eat some dinner?
  - a. *Stiff and sore*
- 5) What happened to the dogs during the night while Billy slept in his bed?
  - a. *The dogs slept by the big tree to make sure the raccoon did not escape.*
- 6) What made Billy realize he simply could not keep chopping any more?
  - a. *He had lots of blisters on his hands.*
- 7) This chapter gives a very good description of what it is like to physically work very hard when your body is not used to it. How is your perception of chopping down a tree different now that you have read this chapter from before you read it?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 8) Why is Billy convinced God had a hand in making the tree fall?
  - a. *The wind that took the tree down affected only the tree he was chopping and no other.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** nonchalantly, belligerent, predicament, slough

- 1) Why didn't Billy want to take his dogs with him to his grandfather's store?
  - a. *Other dogs would gang up on Old Dan.*
- 2) How were Billy's dogs compared with other coon dogs?
  - a. *They were smaller.*
- 3) How did Billy's grandfather let Billy know nicely that it was time to quit "stretching the truth"?
  - a. *He would slip a bar of soap in Billy's pocket.*
- 4) What happened when Billy tried to take Old Dan hunting alone?
  - a. *Old Dan just went home to be with Little Ann.*
- 5) What would always "shut up" the other coon hunters?
  - a. *Billy would have them come inside to see who had the most coon hides.*
- 6) When Billy thought Old Dan might have drowned, where was he really?
  - a. *In a muskrat hole.*
- 7) How did Little Ann save him?
  - a. *She dug out an air hole.*
- 8) How did Billy get him out?
  - a. *He dug him out.*
- 9) What was special about the coon that had lured Old Dan almost to his death?
  - a. *It was very old and had been trapped before.*
- 10) How did Old Dan get up in the tree?
  - a. *The tree was hollow and he climbed in through a hole.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** paralyzed

- 1) Why was Billy so eager to go hunting even though it was foggy and icy and cold?
  - a. *He had been trapped in the house for days because of the storm.*
- 2) Why did everything seem strange to Billy when it was so still and quiet?
  - a. *The river was not flowing.*
- 3) How does Billy save Little Ann from drowning or freezing in the Illinois River? What conclusion does he draw from this experience?
  - a. *When Little Ann gets trapped on the ice in the Illinois River, Billy has to act quickly, and with intelligence as well. When he hears a sound, he thinks it is a fisherman who can help save her, but realizes he is all alone after all—all alone except for the God who is omnipresent. Through His help Billy finds a way to hook Little Ann and drag*

*her to safety, though he has to put his own life on the line in order to do it. Billy is more convinced than ever of God's care over him and his dogs as well.*

- 4) How does Billy care for Little Ann once he has saved her?
  - a. *He digs a spot in the snow and pours some of the lantern's oil into it. He sets it on fire, and massages Little Ann until she can move around.*
- 5) What does Billy's mother say about what Billy did?
  - a. *He does not tell her. He is afraid she might put an end to Billy's hunting.*
- 6) Why is it significant that Billy kept the lantern handle up for three days and mentions that it never fell down though his sisters were tearing through the house and jostling things around?
  - a. *Because the lantern fell in the stillness - he believes - in answer to his prayer.*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** disposition

- 1) How do the Pritchard boys behave toward Billy's grandfather?
  - a. *Rudely*
- 2) What did they buy from Billy's grandfather on the pretext that it was for their father?
  - a. *Tobacco*
- 3) What did they do with it?
  - a. *They began using it right in front of him.*
- 4) When Billy's grandfather went to grind the corn, what did he do with the store?
  - a. *He locked it up.*
- 5) Why did Billy's mother say Billy should be kind to Ranie?
  - a. *She knew his brothers were always picking on him.*
- 6) How much money was riding on the bet?
  - a. *\$2 on each side*
- 7) What was the first thing the ghost coon did that most coons would not do?
  - a. *Swam upstream*
- 8) Why were the boys all excited?
  - a. *Because Billy's dogs kept right on the ghost coon's trail.*
- 9) How did the boys say the ghost coon would disappear?
  - a. *In one certain tree.*

## CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** protruding, mackinaw, Decoration Day

- 1) Where was the ghost coon hiding?
  - a. *In the hollow post.*
- 2) Why didn't Billy kill the ghost coon?
  - a. *Because the ghost coon had lived so long and he felt sorry for it.*
- 3) What happened to the money for the bet?
  - a. *The Pritchard boys would not give it back.*
- 4) What animal came that made the hairs on the back of Billy's neck stand on end?
  - a. *The Pritchard boys' hound dog.*
- 5) What happened in the dog fight?
  - a. *The Pritchard's dog picked a fight with Old Dan, Little Ann joined in, and the two of them would have killed the Pritchard's dog except Billy intervened.*
- 6) How did Rubin fall on Billy's hunting axe?

- a. *He had taken the axe to go kill Billy's dogs with it. He was running, he tripped, and he fell on it.*
- 7) What was Ranie's reaction like?
  - a. *He was in shock.*
- 8) Just before he died, what did Rubin ask of Billy?
  - a. *To pull the axe out of his wound.*
- 9) Who was the only person authorized to move a deceased person's body?
  - a. *Billy's grandfather*
- 10) What was Rubin's funeral like?
  - a. *The Pritchard's buried him privately on their own land.*

#### CHAPTER 14

- 1) Why was Billy's father concerned about leaving his mother?
  - a. *She was expecting a baby.*
- 2) What did Billy do before they left to make things easier for his mother?
  - a. *Stacked plenty of firewood for her, filled a stall with hay so she did not have to climb into the loft.*
- 3) What did Billy's grandfather want Billy to hide from his grandmother?
  - a. *Liquor*

#### CHAPTER 15

- 1) How did Billy get Little Ann ready for the beauty contest?
  - a. *He brushed her with his grandfather's brush and comb set and he rubbed her down with butter.*
- 2) What animal caused Billy to worry?
  - a. *An owl*
- 3) How did Billy make Little Ann come to him during the competition?
  - a. *He snapped his fingers.*
- 4) What were the rules for the hunting part of the competition?
  - a. *5 sets of dogs were to go out with their hunters and a judge for each pair. The top dogs would compete in a run off. Any dogs that don't meet or beat the first day's winners would be eliminated.*
- 5) What made Billy hide under the wagon with his dogs?
  - a. *His grandfather realized Billy had used his brush and comb on the dog.*
- 6) What did Little Ann win?
  - a. *A silver cup*
- 7) What happened at the competition that made Billy feel out of place?
  - a. *He saw hunters wearing nice expensive clothes and boots while he had raggedy clothing only.*
- 8) How did the other hunters treat Billy?
  - a. *Like a man*
- 9) What did Billy's father and grandfather allow him to drink that made him feel grown up?
  - a. *Coffee*

#### CHAPTER 16

##### VOCABULARY: 410 gauge

- 1) Why did Billy choose where he chose to start hunting?

- a. *He expected it was a great place for coons to live and they were midway between the mountains and the river.*
- 2) What happened after the dogs got their first coon of the night that surprised the men?
  - a. *Old Dan and Little Ann doctored each other's wounds.*
- 3) What does it mean to "bawl treed?"
  - a. *It means the dogs have chased a raccoon into a tree that has no escape routes for the raccoon.*
- 4) Why did Billy always insist on waiting until both of his dogs bawled treed?
  - a. *Old Dan often made mistakes and Little Ann never did and he always wanted both of them there so the coon had no way of escaping.*
- 5) What was the most beautiful sight the other hunters ever saw?
  - a. *Old Dan and Little Ann working together to get a coon.*
- 6) Why did they have to light a fire the first night Billy hunted in the competition?
  - a. *Billy's grandfather had fallen into the river.*

## CHAPTER 17

**VOCABULARY:** leeward, carcass

- 1) How did the men find Little Ann in the snowstorm?
  - a. *Billy's dad shot his gun in the air and Little Ann came to them.*
- 2) How many coons were in the hollow tree?
  - a. *3*
- 3) How many coons did Billy and his dogs get over the entire competition?
  - a. *7 coons*
- 4) What happened when Billy pointed after the coon that got away?
  - a. *The dogs tore after it.*
- 5) What happened to Billy's Grandfather during the storm?
  - a. *He fell and hurt his ankle.*
- 6) What did Billy do that made his grandfather feel better?
  - a. *He kept placing warmed coon skins on his injured ankle.*

## CHAPTER 18

- 1) What made Billy faint?
  - a. *Someone ran up to tell him his dogs were frozen solid.*
- 2) When the storm let up, what sound did the hunting party hear?
  - a. *25 searchers whooping for them.*
- 3) How did the dogs' fur become frozen?
  - a. *They had gone into the river.*
- 4) Why were all the men amazed?
  - a. *The dogs had stayed with the coon through the blizzard.*
- 5) Besides the two cups, what else did Billy come home with?
  - a. *More than \$300*
- 6) What did Billy's mother give the dogs?
  - a. *Heaping plates of food.*
- 7) What did she do after giving it to them?
  - a. *She prayed*

## CHAPTER 19

VOCABULARY: shocked corn

- 1) Where was Billy hunting when his dogs treed the mountain lion?
  - a. *Where the cyclone had gone through the mountains.*
- 2) Billy used imagery when describing the mountain lion. What did he call the mountain lion?
  - a. *A devil cat*
- 3) What did the cat sound like?
  - a. *It had a "blood-curdling" scream.*
- 4) What were its eyes like?
  - a. *Burning and yellow, and later, they were green with rage.*
- 5) When the mountain lion leaped to attack Billy, what did the dogs do?
  - a. *They got between him and the cat and they rose from the ground as one.*
- 6) How was the mountain lion finally killed?
  - a. *Billy struck it in the back with his ax while Little Ann and Old Dan clung to its neck.*
- 7) Which dog died first?
  - a. *Old Dan*
- 8) What did the other dog do?
  - a. *Little Ann lost her will to live. She crawled with the last of her strength to Old Dan's grave and died there.*

## CHAPTER 20

- 1) Who buried Old Dan?
  - a. *Billy*
- 2) Who buried Little Ann?
  - a. *Billy*
- 3) What was the family's mood like as they left the old homestead?
  - a. *They were all happy.*
- 4) What was the legend of the red fern?
  - a. *Two Indian children were lost in a blizzard and froze to death, and a red fern grew between them.*
- 5) Whom did Billy's family think planted the red fern?
  - a. *An angel*
- 6) Billy loved those two dogs as deeply as it was possible for him to love them. Was it worth all the trouble he went to when the dogs died so young? Why?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 7) What do you think of the way Billy associated certain things with actions of God? Why?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 8) What was your favorite part of the story?
  - a. *Answers will vary*
- 9) What was the most exciting part of the story?
  - a. *Answers will vary.*



# The Whipping Boy

## CHAPTERS 1- 6

**VOCABULARY:** defiant, exasperation, orphan, contrite, bawl, breeches, ferret, cutthroat, fancy rags, exploits, highwayman, trifle

### CHAPTER 1

- 1) Why is the prince called Prince Brat?
  - a. *He is a spoiled rotten brat who is always doing naughty things to other people and is deserving of a whipping.*
- 2) What was forbidden to do to a prince?
  - a. *It is forbidden to spank, thrash, cuff, smack or whip a prince.*
- 3) What is the prince's threat to the Whipping Boy? Why?
  - a. *Jemmy needed to cry and bellow the next time he was whipped or the prince would tell his father to send him back out on the streets.*
- 4) What is the "job" of a whipping boy?
  - a. *His job is to be whipped any time the prince does something wrong.*

### CHAPTER 2

- 1) Does Jemmy want to be "back in rags"? Why or why not?
  - a. *Yes he does, because he does not want to be beaten when the prince does something wrong*
- 2) Why does the prince *not* learn his lessons?
  - a. *He doesn't think it necessary as others can do it for him*
- 3) What does Master Peckwit do to Jemmy?
  - a. *He raised the switch and beat the whipping boy like a carpet*
- 4) How does the prince go back on his word to Jemmy? How does this effect Jemmy?
  - a. *He does not send Jemmy back on to the streets. He lasts another year as the whipping boy, but learns to read, write and do sums.*

### CHAPTER 3

- 1) What does the price want to do and why?
  - a. *He wants to run away because he is bored.*
- 2) What is some of the mischief the prince has done?
  - a. *He has dumped bullfrogs in the moat, hog-greased the saddles of the knights, and the prince gets whipped for it.*
- 3) How does Jemmy describe his beatings?
  - a. *His hide feels like the devil has run over me with spikes on his shoes.*
- 4) What directions does the prince give Jemmy?
  - a. *Carry the basket, Jemmy-From-The-Streets and follow me.*

### CHAPTER 4

- 1) Because it is foggy, what is Jemmy's plan?
  - a. *He can slip away in the fog and hide in the sewers.*
- 2) What had Jemmy's father taught him?
  - a. *He taught him to find his way through the sewers as they caught rats.*
- 3) What happens to the boys in the fog?
  - a. *They get caught by a couple of cutthroats, Hold-Your-Nose Billy and Cutwater.*

- 4) What is meant by “fancy rags”?
  - a. *It means expensive and dressy clothing.*

#### CHAPTER 5

- 1) Why does Jemmy jab his elbow into Prince Brat’s side?
  - a. *He is telling Prince Brat not let the highway men know who he is.*
- 2) Does the Prince take the cue?
  - a. *No, he tells them he is a prince.*
- 3) What do Hold-Your-Nose Billy and Cutwater see on the horse?
  - a. *The horse has the king’s crest on it.*
- 4) Why does Jemmy say they stole it?
  - a. *He is trying to convince the roughs to let them go.*
- 5) What do you think is the thieves’ plan?
  - a. *They plan to get money in exchange for the prince.*

#### CHAPTER 6

- 1) What was in the basket?
  - a. *The basket contains meat pies, brace of pheasant, china plates, a silver spoon and knife and a golden crown!*
- 2) What is the command to the king from the outlaws?
  - a. *They demand fifty-five pounds of gold coin in trade for Prince Horace (Brat).*
- 3) Does Prince Brat have common sense?
  - a. *No, he does not.*

#### CHAPTERS 7- 13

VOCABULARY: flummox, haughty, paltry, insolent, treason, simpleton, parley, linen, bellows

#### CHAPTER 7

- 1) What does Hold-Your-Nose Billy say about princes and kings?
  - a. *He says that they are taught to read and write as soon as they are out of the cradle.*
- 2) What does Prince Brat admit about his writing skills?
  - a. *“I can’t so much as scratch my own name.”*
- 3) What trick does Jemmy do?
  - a. *He pretends he is the prince and says he’ll write the words.*
- 4) Cutwater is on to them. Why does Prince Brat turn red?
  - a. *He is mad because the thieves think Jemmy is the prince.*
- 5) Jemmy thinks the prince has the sense of a what?
  - a. *The prince has the sense of gnat, a witless servant boy.*

#### CHAPTER 8

No questions.

#### CHAPTER 9

- 1) What had never occurred to the prince before?
  - a. *It never occurred to him that he could be whipped.*
- 2) How is the note going to get to the castle?
  - a. *It was to be sent in the hands of the whipping boy (the real prince).*

## CHAPTER 10

- 1) Jemmy, "the prince", gets mad at the thieves and calls them names. Why does this frighten the real prince?
  - a. *He is afraid they will whip him.*
- 2) Why does Jemmy want the thieves to take the crown with them when they deliver the ransom?
  - a. *Only the crown will convince the king that they are the real villains.*
- 3) What is Prince Brat's reply to the plan that he carry the message to the king?
  - a. *He will not go back to the castle!*

## CHAPTER 11

- 1) Who is going to deliver the message?
  - a. *The royal horse will deliver the message.*
- 2) Why do you think the prince refuses to go back to the castle?
  - a. *Give credit for an answer that backs the reason with facts from the story.*

## CHAPTER 12

- 1) What is Jemmy's plan now?
  - a. *Jemmy will hide under the straw and pretend he has snuck out.*
- 2) What does the prince do?
  - a. *He tells Cutwater that Jemmy is under the straw?*

## CHAPTER 13

- 1) How does Jemmy get away from Cutwater?
  - a. *He jumps out of the hay, surprises him and runs past him out the door.*
- 2) Jemmy dismisses himself from the prince. What does the Prince do?
  - a. *The prince says he will just follow him anyway.*

## CHAPTERS 14-20

**VOCABULARY:** mudlarking, apprentice, betray, gallows, ruffian, embankment, spectacles, ignorance, ballad, broadsides, befuddle, notorious, convict

## CHAPTER 14

- 1) Who points Jemmy and the prince in the right direction toward the river?
  - a. *Betsy, the gypsy girl who has a head like a compass.*
- 2) Does the prince want to be dirty with torn clothes?
  - a. *Yes he does, it's the best time he has ever had.*

## CHAPTER 15

- 1) What does it mean "to fend for your own self"?
  - a. *It means to be able to take care of yourself without an adult.*
- 2) While mudlarking what does Jemmy find to make money?
  - a. *He finds barrel staves to sell for firewood and a birdcage to hold rats.*
- 3) Who does Jemmy help out of the bog? How?
  - a. *Jemmy uses the barrel staves to get the coach of the Hot Potato Man out of the bog.*

## CHAPTER 16

- 1) Does Prince Brat betray Jemmy to the highway men?
  - a. *No, for the first time he doesn't give away what Jemmy is doing. He said he swam the river.*

- 2) What happens to Prince Brat when he is caught by the highway men? What is his reaction?
  - a. *He is whipped for the first time and he doesn't utter a sound.*
- 3) Who comes to the rescue?
  - a. *Petunia the dancing bear scares off the thieves.*

#### CHAPTER 17

- 1) What does Betsy call Prince Brat? Why?
  - a. *She calls him the "brave one" because he doesn't yell out when he is whipped.*
- 2) What does Jemmy think Prince Brat now has?
  - a. *He feels the prince has a cast-iron streak of pluck.*
- 3) How do they finally reach the city?
  - a. *They all travel together with Captain Nips, the hot-Potato Man.*

#### CHAPTER 18

- 1) What was Prince Brat never allowed to do?
  - a. *The prince was never allowed to carry anything.*
- 2) When Jemmy lived in the sewer, he was not aware of what? Why did he think this?
  - a. *He was not aware of how ignorant he was, he is now exposed to learning and enjoys it.*
- 3) What gossip does the milk lady tell Prince Brat?
  - a. *In her gossip, she calls the prince Prince Brat. He had never heard that before.*
- 4) Prince Brat is beginning to have self-awareness. What does he learn about himself?
  - a. *He asks if everyone hates him because they call him Prince Brat?*
- 5) What is the "news seller's" story?
  - a. *The story is that the prince was sold to gypsies and the whipping boy is charged with the scheme.*

#### CHAPTER 19

- 1) Where do the boys go when they spot Cutwater and Hold-Your-Nose Billy?
  - a. *They escape into the sewers.*
- 2) Why does the prince want to be like Jemmy?
  - a. *The prince wants to be like Jemmy because Jemmy is not afraid of anything!*
- 3) What do Cutwater and Hold-Your-Nose Billy find out in the sewer?
  - a. *They learn who the real prince is and that they had whipped him, a crime punishable by death.*
- 4) How does Ol' Johnny Toscher help the boys?
  - a. *He tells the thieves to go in the wrong direction to get to the main sewer.*
- 5) Where do Hold-Your-Nose Billy and Cutwater go?
  - a. *They go into the brewery tunnel and get covered by rats.*

#### CHAPTER 20

- 1) What does it mean to "do a jig at the end of a rope"?
  - a. *It means to be hung as a punishment.*
- 2) Do Jemmy and Prince Brat trust each other?
  - a. *They do up to a point. Jemmy is not sure.*
- 3) The prince is up to mischief? What does he do?
  - a. *He has Betsy and Captain Nips turn in himself and the whipping boy so they could get the reward.*

- 4) What does the prince swear to do?
  - a. *He will do his lesson, not use a night candle and to behave himself.*
- 5) What does the king tell the boys that he wants to do?
  - a. *He wants to go with them the next time they want to go on an adventure.*

# White Fang

## CHAPTER I: THE TRAIL OF THE MEAT

**VOCABULARY:** ominous, desolation, infallibility, futility, rimed, prominent, dictum, cessation, discernible, tangible, ardor, palpitant, traversed, evinced, inclination, commiseratingly, cribbage, speculative, salient, epitaph

- 1) What seemed strange to Bill when he counted his dogs?
  - a. *They were traveling with six and he counted seven. After they were fed, there were six again. In the morning there were only five.*
- 2) What encircled the men and dogs when they made camp?
  - a. *Wolves*
- 3) What was in the box on the sled?
  - a. *A wealthy man who had died.*
- 4) Why was it odd that the count of the dogs kept changing?
  - a. *The dogs were scared of the wolves yet they let one come amongst them.*

## CHAPTER II: THE SHE WOLF

**VOCABULARY:** meridian, intonation, pall, fervid, blasphemy, \*objurgation, contraption, lambasted, cogitated, dogmatized, quinine, accession

- 1) How long did daylight last?
  - a. *Six hours*
- 2) What happened at feeding time?
  - a. *The mystery wolf ate half a fish and got whacked with a club from Bill.*
- 3) What happened to Frog?
  - a. *He disappeared in the night.*
- 4) Why didn't Bill get coffee?
  - a. *He had rigged a way of keeping the dogs and said he would go without his coffee if another dog disappeared. Spanker did.*
- 5) What was the cause of all their trouble?
  - a. *A she-wolf*

## CHAPTER III: THE HUNGER CRY

**VOCABULARY:** auspiciously, \*facetious, mincing, dubiously, ingratiate, dissipated, resilience, sepulchre, undulating, certitude, sustenance, gustatory, wistfulness, malignity, tenure, precarious, fagots, efficacy, protracted

- 1) Why were the wolves so brazen?
  - a. *They were starving.*
- 2) How did the wolves manage to pick off the dogs one by one?
  - a. *The she-wolf lured the dog away from safety then the pack would attack.*
- 3) What happened to Bill?
  - a. *He tried to save one of the dogs and was eaten himself.*
- 4) What did Henry do?
  - a. *He tied the coffin up in a tree and went away as fast as he could with just the two dogs.*
- 5) As the wolves kept getting closer to him and he kept falling asleep, how did he keep himself awake?
  - a. *He tied a burning pine knot to his hand.*
- 6) What did Henry do when he fell asleep and the wolves attacked him?
  - a. *He jumped into the fire and threw hot embers at them.*

- 7) What finally saved Henry?  
a. *A bunch of men came and found him.*

#### CHAPTER IV: THE BATTLE OF THE FANGS

**VOCABULARY:** precipitately, discomfiture, inertness, splay, palmed, prodigiously, placate, erstwhile, \*condescended, vanquished, \*spasmodically, protracted, myriad, quandary

- 1) Who led the pack?  
a. *The she-wolf*
- 2) What finally satiated the hunger of the pack?  
a. *A large bull moose.*
- 3) What did the wolf pack of 40 do now that they found enough prey?  
a. *They went their separate ways.*
- 4) Which suitor won the she-wolf?  
a. *The old one-eyed wolf.*

#### CHAPTER V: THE LAIR

**VOCABULARY:** imperative, \*fissure, progeny, ptarmigan

- 1) What was the she-wolf searching for?  
a. *A den*
- 2) What was she afraid of after the cubs were born?  
a. *That One-Eye would eat the cubs.*

#### CHAPTER VI: THE GRAY CUB

**VOCABULARY:** volition

- 1) What was different about the gray wolf cub?  
a. *The others were red-hued while he was gray, and he was far more ferocious and adventuresome.*
- 2) How did his brothers and sisters die?  
a. *They starved.*
- 3) What happened to One Eye?  
a. *He was killed by the lynx.*

#### CHAPTER VII: THE WALL OF THE WORLD

**VOCABULARY:** pottage, remunerations, \*vehemence, permeable, variegated, antecedent, \*culminating, vindictive

- 1) What did the gray wolf think about the opening of the cave?  
a. *He thought it was a wall.*
- 2) What was the first meal the gray wolf cub won for himself?  
a. *The nest of Ptarmigan chicks.*
- 3) What saved the cub from the hawk?  
a. *His own fear drove him into a bush just in time.*
- 4) What saved the cub from the weasel?  
a. *His mother*

## CHAPTER VIII: THE LAW OF MEAT

**VOCABULARY:** expedient, intrepidity, admonition, conspicuously, conduces, impunity, ignominiously, epitomized, \*voracious

- 1) Explain the Law of the Meat.
  - a. *It means that every living thing is meant to kill or be killed.*

## CHAPTER IX: THE MAKERS OF FIRE

**VOCABULARY:** precarious, cached, manifest, \*ostentatious, \*belligerent, interminably, imminence, verity

- 1) Why did the men name the wolf cub "White Fang?"
  - a. *Because of the way he bared his teeth when one of them picked him up.*
- 2) Why did his mother stop acting aggressively toward the men who had hurt her son?
  - a. *One of the men recognized her and called her by name.*
- 3) What happened when Kiche and White Fang met the dogs of the Indian camp?
  - a. *The dogs attacked them.*
- 4) How did White Fang classify men?
  - a. *As fire makers, gods, law makers, law executers.*
- 5) What happened to White Fang's nose and tongue?
  - a. *They were burned when he investigated the fire.*

## CHAPTER X: THE BONDAGE

- 1) What dog bullied White Fang?
  - a. *Lip Lip*
- 2) How did White Fang get revenge?
  - a. *He had Lip Lip chase him to within reach of his mother and his mother sorely punished Lip Lip.*
- 3) What did Gray Beaver do to White Fang when White Fang tried to swim after his mother?
  - a. *He beat him soundly.*
- 4) Did Gray Beaver ever pet White Fang?
  - a. *No*

## CHAPTER XI: THE OUTCAST

**VOCABULARY:** fomenter, enmity, serrulated, sanguinary, exigencies

- 1) What did White Fang do to dogs who chased him ahead of the pack?
  - a. *He turned the tables on him and attacked his pursuer.*
- 2) What leader the camp dogs follow?
  - a. *Lip Lip*
- 3) What was the water trick White Fang liked to play?
  - a. *He would lead the camp dogs on a chase of him into the woods and make them lose his scent by going through a stream.*

## CHAPTER XII: THE TRAIL OF THE GODS

**VOCABULARY:** apprehend

- 1) How does Gray Beaver greet White Fang when he returns?
  - a. *With meat and no punishment.*



### CHAPTER XIII: THE COVENANT

**VOCABULARY:** sacrilegious, indomitable

- 1) What happened when White Fang was attacked unjustly by the boy with the axe?
  - a. *White Fang bit the boy.*

### CHAPTER XIV: THE FAMINE

**VOCABULARY:** temerity, erred, overtures, preeminently, essayed

- 1) Who won the meat when Baseek challenged White Fang?
  - a. *White Fang*
- 2) How did Kiche and White Fang act when they finally saw each other again?
  - a. *White Fang was friendly, but Kiche had new puppies and chased him away.*
- 3) Why didn't the women and children eat during the worst part of the famine?
  - a. *So the men would have enough strength to hunt.*

### CHAPTER XV: THE ENEMY OF THE KIND

**VOCABULARY:** \*commiserate, \*synonymous, accentuated, infinitesimal, primeval, plummet

- 1) Who were White Fang's "superior gods?"
  - a. *White men*
- 2) How did White Fang escape punishment when he killed white men's dogs?
  - a. *He did the initial fighting and downing of the dog then let the pack finish it off. By the time the owners got there, he was simply off watching the fray while the other dogs were punished.*

### CHAPTER XVI: THE MAD GOD

**VOCABULARY:** wont, invidious, preeminently, niggardly, parsimony, prognathous, emanations, stolidly

- 1) What did the men who lived at Fort Yukon call themselves?
  - a. *Sour doughs*
- 2) What did White Fang think of Beauty Smith?
  - a. *He loathed Smith.*
- 3) What did Beauty Smith do to White Fang when he kept going back to Gray Beaver?
  - a. *Severely beat him.*

### CHAPTER XVII: THE REIGN OF HATE

- 1) What made White Fang so good at fighting?
  - a. *Being born in the wild, being attacked by the pack constantly, and a lust for fighting and killing. He also had the musculature of a big dog and the survival instincts and ferocity of a wolf.*
- 2) What is wrong with tormenting an animal just to watch him fight fiercely?
  - a. *We were given dominion over the animals because God created us to be like him. Tormenting anything is nothing like what God wants us to do. He wants us to be responsible with all he's given us. Tormenting an animal is just wrong.*

### CHAPTER XVIII: THE CLINGING DEATH

**VOCABULARY:** partisan, \*impetus, gyration, derisively, equilibrium, extricated, peremptory, forfeited

- 1) What was different about the bull dog's fighting style?
  - a. *He did not jump around. He took White Fang's abuse without stopping. He was low to the ground. He had a huge mouth.*

- 2) What did Weedon Scott do when he arrived at the dog fight?
  - a. *He and Matt worked to get the dogs apart.*
- 3) How much did Weedon Scott pay for White Fang?
  - a. *\$150*

#### **CHAPTER XIX: THE INDOMITABLE**

**VOCABULARY:** antipathy

- 1) What happened to Major?
  - a. *White Fang killed him.*
- 2) What happened when Weedon Scott tried to pet White Fang?
  - a. *White Fang bit him.*
- 3) What happened when Matt took out a rifle?
  - a. *White Fang hid.*
- 4) Why did they decide to let White Fang live?
  - a. *He was too intelligent to kill.*

#### **CHAPTER XX: THE LOVE-MASTER**

**VOCABULARY:** proffered, retaliate, oracular, axioms, ineradicable, endorsement, primordial, burgeoning, \*inarticulate, vicariously, \*recrudescence, \*ignominious

- 1) What was the one aggressive thing that White Fang did even to Weedon Scott?
  - a. *Growl*
- 2) Whom did White Fang viciously attack? Why?
  - a. *Beauty Smith, because he sneaked onto Weedon Scott's property intending to steal White Fang.*

#### **CHAPTER XXI: THE LONG TRAIL**

- 1) What was strange about the conversation between Matt and Weedon Scott?
  - a. *Scott kept saying he could not bring a wolf into the city, Matt kept saying he agreed with him, but neither of them truly thought it best to leave White Fang behind.*

#### **CHAPTER XXII: THE SOUTHLAND**

- 1) What happened with Judge Scott's two dogs that had never happened with White Fang before?
  - a. *They knocked White Fang off his feet.*

#### **CHAPTER XXIII: THE GOD'S DOMAIN**

**VOCABULARY:** \*denizens, effusively, amity, appurtenances, myriad, censure, impinging

- 1) How did Weedon Scott teach White Fang not to touch chickens after White Fang had killed 50 of them?
  - a. *He cuffed White Fang and admonished him then made him smell them. Then he took White Fang to the chicken yard and worked with him there until he mostly just ignored the chickens.*
- 2) White Fang never fought with dogs anymore because his master forbade it. What happened when the men at the bar set three dogs on White Fang and Weedon Scott stopped the carriage?
  - a. *Weedon Scott told White Fang to go for it and White Fang killed all three.*

## CHAPTER XXIV: THE CALL OF KIND

**VOCABULARY:** efficacious

- 1) How did White Fang inform the family that Weedon needed help?
  - a. *He barked and he tugged on Alice's skirt.*

## CHAPTER XXV: THE SLEEPING WOLF

**VOCABULARY:** ubiquitous, perjured, parlance

- 1) What was the secret between Alice and White Fang?
  - a. *She had him sleep in the house to protect the family.*
- 2) What happened when Jim Hall came to the house?
  - a. *White Fang attacked and killed him when Jim Hall first put a foot on the stairs.*
- 3) Did White Fang survive?
  - a. *Yes*
- 4) What crawled all over White Fang in the end?
  - a. *White Fang's and Collie's puppies.*

# Witch of Blackbird Pond

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** brigantine, forecandle, pinnacles, Goodwife, humiliation

- 1) What happened when Kit met the three shabbily dressed women?
  - a. *She was going to be friendly and say "hello", but the women were coldly staring at her with sharp curiosity.*
- 2) What did Kit think of the homes in Wethersfield?
  - a. *They looked like ugly boxes.*
- 3) What did Kit do when the little girl dropped her doll into the river?
  - a. *She asked the captain to return to get it, and when he wouldn't, she jumped in herself.*
- 4) What kind of reaction did Kit get for what she did?
  - a. *Rage and shock*
- 5) What surprised Kit about the water?
  - a. *It was cold.*
- 6) What did Goodwife Cruff accuse Kit of being? Why?
  - a. *A witch: only witches could float according to the water test.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** punctilious, wraith, intangible, indignation, ketch, brocade

- 1) Why was the ship going so slowly according to Goodwife Cruff?
  - a. *She thought Kit had put it under a spell.*
- 2) Who was the only person on the ship to speak in friendship to Kit?
  - a. *John Holbrook*
- 3) What was meant by "walking the river?"
  - a. *Two sailors would row ahead of the ship in a small boat, and drop an anchor. Then ten men would pull the ship forward using the rope attached to the anchor.*
- 4) What did Nat think of slavery?
  - a. *He was disgusted by the practice.*
- 5) What had Kit thought all her life about slavery?
  - a. *She had not thought of it at all.*
- 6) What had Kit read that shocked John Holbrook?
  - a. *Plays*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** nondescript

- 1) Who did Kit think her Aunt Rachel was?
  - a. *A servant*
- 2) Who did Kit's Aunt think Kit was?
  - a. *Her (Rachel's) sister, Margaret.*
- 3) What was her reception like?
  - a. *Her aunt invited Kit to breakfast. Her cousins welcomed her. Her uncle welcomed her in words alone.*
- 4) Why hadn't Kit written to her aunt and uncle to tell them she was coming?
  - a. *She had had to sell everything to pay her deceased grandfathers debts, and she had nowhere to go. She found out about a ship that was heading for Connecticut, and she became a passenger rather than being homeless for months waiting for a reply.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** exhilarating, paduasoy, chagrined, tremulous, carding, exasperation, monotonous

- 1) Why was John Wood mad when he came home to get his axe?
  - a. *His wife and daughters were trying on some of Kit's clothes. Puritan's wore only the meanest, simplest of clothing.*
- 2) What was the secret reason Kit came to Connecticut so quickly?
  - a. *She did not want to marry an older man who wanted to marry her.*
- 3) Why did Judith scold Kit about how she was stirring the soap?
  - a. *It would become lumpy.*
- 4) What happened to the corn pudding?
  - a. *Kit grew impatient about how slowly you had to add the cornmeal and threw in the last half all at once. It became an "indigestible mass" that they all had to eat that night for dinner.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** placating, auspiciously, pillory, turret, undulated, staidness, nonplussed, damask

- 1) What two things did Matthew disapprove of before Kit's first trip to the meeting house?
  - a. *Kit did not want to go and her clothing was too fancy.*
- 2) What did Kit think of the sermon?
  - a. *She thought it was frightfully dull.*
- 3) What shock did Kit receive on the way home about the meeting?
  - a. *There would be a second meeting in the afternoon.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** condescension, allegiance, cadence, inexorably, timorous, hypocrite, sepulcher, conspicuous, placid

- 1) What did Matthew Wood and Dr. Bulkeley disagree about?
  - a. *Matthew Wood believed in a free government and did not want the colony to lose rights and freedoms they now enjoyed. Dr. Bulkeley wanted everyone to follow Go. Andros who was appointed by King James.*
- 2) Who wanted to come to call on Kit?
  - a. *William Ashby*
- 3) What did people do in the evenings?
  - a. *Read the Bible and knit.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** implacable, bachelor, leisure, veritable

- 1) What did Kit think about her time alone with William Ashby?
  - a. *She thought it did not go well, because they did not talk much.*
- 2) What did the family think of it?
  - a. *They thought it went very well.*
- 3) What did he mean when William Ashby said he was going to start building his house?
  - a. *He had decided to court and marry Kit.*
- 4) Who did Judith want to marry?
  - a. *John Holbrook*
- 5) What did they eat for a treat?
  - a. *Popcorn*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** menial, dubiously

- 1) What did Kit see that took her breath away?
  - a. *The Great Meadows*
- 2) What did the people think of Widow Tupper?
  - a. *They thought she was a witch.*
- 3) What new job did Mercy offer to Kit?
  - a. *To teach children to read at the dame school.*
- 4) Why didn't the Woods have a son?
  - a. *The first one died as a child of fever. The second one lived only a week. Matthew Wood was never the same again.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** precarious, indulgence, obstreperous, vengeance, priggish, incredulous, loiterer, ravenous, tangibly, incoherently, rapier, hornbook

- 1) What did Kit think of her task as a school teacher from the primers?
  - a. *She thought it very dull.*
- 2) How did she teach that was different from other teachers?
  - a. *She made word games out of reading and writing and read or told the children stories as a reward for doing well.*
- 3) What happened when Kit had the children act out a story from the Bible?
  - a. *The kids took their part too seriously and a tussle ensued.*
- 4) What was the reaction of Mr. Kimberly and Reverend Woodbridge when they discovered the children were "play acting?"
  - a. *They were shocked and closed the school.*
- 5) Where did Kit go when she was overwhelmingly upset?
  - a. *To the Great Meadows.*
- 6) Who found her there?
  - a. *Widow Tupper*
- 7) What did she do to Kit?
  - a. *She spoke kindly to her and gave her food and drink.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** malicious, diligently, unorthodox, indignant, rapturously

- 1) What was the result of Kit talking with the schoolmaster?
  - a. *She and Mercy got a second chance. The school was reopened.*
- 2) What was Aunt Rachel's reaction to Kit's going to see Widow Tupper?
  - a. *She was shocked and forbade Kit from going back.*
- 3) What did Hannah have to pay that shocked Kit?
  - a. *Taxes on her swampland and fines for not attending the meeting.*
- 4) Who came to visit Hannah while Kit was there?
  - a. *Nat Eaton*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** docilely, filigree, exquisite, adroit

- 1) Who has been leaving flowers for Kit?
  - a. *Prudence Cruff*
- 2) What does Kit give to her?

- a. *Her own hornbook and secret reading lessons.*
- 3) What is William's favorite topic of discussion?
  - a. *The price of every piece of the house he is building.*
- 4) What secret did Kit discover about Mercy?
  - a. *She was in love with John Holbrook.*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** nonchalant, heretic

- 1) What did Kit do when she was given a free afternoon?
  - a. *She went to Hannah's.*
- 2) What did she do there and with whom?
  - a. *She helped Nat Eaton thatch Hannah's roof.*

## CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** blithely, propitious, infatuated

- 1) What were the girls excited about going to?
  - a. *A corn husking*
- 2) What secret did Kit learn from John Holbrook?
  - a. *That he loved Mercy.*
- 3) What happened when he tried to stay away from the corn husking to visit Mercy?
  - a. *Judith thought he was going to ask for her hand in marriage, and she made the entire family think the same thing.*
- 4) Did John tell the family his true intentions?
  - a. *No*
- 5) What did William reveal to Kit on the way to the corn husking?
  - a. *That he intended to marry her.*
- 6) How did that make Kit feel?
  - a. *Panicky*

## CHAPTER 14

- 1) Why did Autumn in New England surprise Kit?
  - a. *She had lived in the tropics all her life and had never seen the trees change color.*
- 2) Why was Nat upset with Kit?
  - a. *He had heard rumors that she was getting married to William Ashby.*

## CHAPTER 15

**VOCABULARY:** grenadiers, insubordination

- 1) What are the men talking about in Matthew Woods' company room?
  - a. *King James has sent Governor Andros, and he plans to take away the freedoms granted by Connecticut's charter.*
- 2) What happened to the charter?
  - a. *It disappeared.*
- 3) Why was Kit proud of her uncle?
  - a. *He was as brave and magnificent as Gov. Andros.*

## CHAPTER 16

**VOCABULARY:** premonition, poignant

- 1) What happened to William Ashby's house on All Hallow's Eve?
  - a. *Some rivermen put jack-o-lanterns in the windows.*

- 2) What did the Puritan colony do to Nat and the two others caught in the crime?
  - a. *They had to sit in the stockades and were no longer allowed in the town.*
- 3) What did Kit give to Prudence?
  - a. *A copy book, quill, and ink.*
- 4) What did she have her copy?
  - a. *Her name*

## CHAPTER 17

**VOCABULARY:** bleeding, malady, consternation, infidel

- 1) What happened shortly after John Holbrook left for Hartsford after enlisting in the militia?
  - a. *The children became sick.*
- 2) What did the surgeon do for Judith?
  - a. *He bled her and had her drink a brew of round, roasted toads.*
- 3) Soon the sickness had spread to every home. What did the townsfolk want Matthew to help them do?
  - a. *Go get the witch of Blackbird Pond.*
- 4) What was Matthew's response?
  - a. *"I'll hold with no witch hunt."*
- 5) What did the woman say in response to Matthew?
  - a. *That he should take care of the witch in his own house.*
- 6) Kit clearly disobeyed her guardian by going to warn Widow Tupper about the mob. Why was she in the right for doing so?
  - a. *She was trying to save an innocent life.*
- 7) While the mob destroyed Widow Tupper's home and tried to kill her cats, why didn't they kill her goats?
  - a. *The goats were worth money and they wanted to steal them.*
- 8) What justice is there in mob action, especially when it is acting only on suspicion and prejudice rather than unchallengeable evidence?
  - a. *There is none.*
- 9) How did Hannah get to safety?
  - a. *Kit hid her and then Nat's ship, the Dolphin came by. Kit swam to the ship. Nat took Hannah and her cat aboard.*
- 10) Why didn't Kit escape, too?
  - a. *She wanted to stay, because of her fear for Mercy, who was so ill.*

## CHAPTER 18

**VOCABULARY:** Goodman, inveigled

- 1) How did Goodwife Cruff think Hannah was able to escape the mob?
  - a. *She thought Hannah had changed herself into a mouse and that the cat had carried her away.*
- 2) What had the mob found at Hannah's?
  - a. *Kit's hornbook*
- 3) Why was Kit locked up in the shed?
  - a. *She was accused of witchcraft.*
- 4) What did Kit learn could happen to her?
  - a. *She could be branded, banished, hanged, or have her ear taken off.*
- 5) What was Kit more worried about than her own situation?
  - a. *Prudence*



- 6) Do you think being able to read would make a difference to you if you were “half starved and beaten and overworked?”
- a. *Answers will vary*

## CHAPTER 19

**VOCABULARY:** sundry, instigation, preternatural, alleged, infer, pandemonium

- 1) Who did Kit hope would come to speak in her defense?
  - a. *William Ashby*
- 2) Did he come?
  - a. *No*
- 3) Many people testified about many strange, unprovable things that Kit had allegedly done? Did the learned men of the court take them seriously?
  - a. *No*
- 4) What piece of hard evidence was presented to the court?
  - a. *The copy book Kit had given to Prudence.*
- 5) What saved Kit?
  - a. *Nat brought Prudence to the trial, who testified that Kit had simply been teaching her to read and to write.*
- 6) Many people testified about many strange, unprovable things that Kit had allegedly done. Did the learned men of the court take them seriously?
  - a. *No*

## CHAPTER 20

**VOCABULARY:** perforce, surreptitiously, lutestring, arduous

- 1) Why had William stayed away for so long?
  - a. *He did not want to be associated with someone accused of being a witch, though he told Kit he stayed away out of respect for the illness in the house.*
- 2) What terrible news put a damper on the festivities at Thankful Peabody's wedding?
  - a. *The militia regiment had been attacked, and John Holbrook had been taken captive by Indians.*
- 3) Of what did Kit dream?
  - a. *Of going back to Barbados.*
- 4) When John arrived at the Woods' house, who did he run to for comfort?
  - a. *Mercy*

## CHAPTER 21

- 1) Who was to get married in the double wedding?
  - a. *John and Mercy: Judith and William*
- 2) What had Kit decided to do?
  - a. *She had decided to sell her lovely dresses and move to Barbados as a governess.*
- 3) What did Kit realize as she sat pondering in the Great Meadows?
  - a. *That she loved Nat.*
- 4) Who came to ask her hand in marriage?
  - a. *Nat*

# A Wrinkle in Time

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** delinquent, uncanny, liverwurst, prodigious, supine

- 1) Why did Meg tackle a boy on the way home from school?
  - a. *He made fun of Charles Wallace.*
- 2) How did Meg's father find out that she is smart?
  - a. *He gave her I.Q. tests*
- 3) What takes away her fear of the weather?
  - a. *The comfort of the kitchen.*
- 4) When Fortinbras announces that someone is at the door, who does Meg think it is?
  - a. *The tramp that's rumored to be around town.*
- 5) What does Mrs. Whatsit say she sprains when she falls off the chair?
  - a. *Her dignity*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** belligerent, antagonistic, tractable, preconditioned, peremptory, assimilate

- 1) Why does Meg get sent to the principal's office?
  - a. *Because she is rude to her teacher.*
- 2) What eases Meg's tension from the day?
  - a. *Charles Wallace holding her hand.*
- 3) Why doesn't Charles Wallace learn to read?
  - a. *He wants to appear normal when he starts school.*
- 4) Why did the ladies steal the sheets?
  - a. *In case they need to scare someone away by looking like ghosts.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** gamboled, tangible

- 1) What subject does Calvin struggle with in school?
  - a. *Math*
- 2) What subject does Meg excel at?
  - a. *Math*
- 3) What does Charles Wallace request for his bedtime story?
  - a. *The book of Genesis*
- 4) What does Calvin say is the rumor around town about Meg's father?
  - a. *That he ran off with another woman.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** corporeal, inexorable, ineffable, metamorphose

- 1) Why does Charles Wallace get through the tesseract first?
  - a. *He is the youngest.*
- 2) What does Mrs. Which look like when she appears?
  - a. *A witch*
- 3) What is the song about that the creatures on Uriel sing?
  - a. *It is a song of praise to God,*
- 4) What do the children need the flowers for?
  - a. *To breathe in a thin atmosphere.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** dissolution, illuminating, intolerable, protoplasm

- 1) What prop do the ladies use to demonstrate a tesseract?
  - a. *Mrs. Who's skirt.*
- 2) Why do the children get flattened on the planet where the ladies take them by accident?
  - a. *It is in the second dimension.*
- 3) Why won't anyone on Earth wonder where the children are?
  - a. *Tesseract wrinkles time so that they will get home before they left.*
- 4) How old, in words, is Mrs. Whatsit?
  - a. *Two billion, three hundred seventy-nine million, one hundred fifty-two thousand, four hundred ninety-seven years, eight months, and three days.*
- 5) What is the Black Thing?
  - a. *The power of Evil.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** myopic, precipitously, propitious, talisman, resilience

- 1) What is Mrs. Murry doing when they see her?
  - a. *Writing to Mr. Murry.*
- 2) Why does seeing her help Meg to go on?
  - a. *It makes her angry.*
- 3) What is Meg's gift from Mrs. Whatsit?
  - a. *Her faults*
- 4) What is her gift from Mrs. Who?
  - a. *Glasses*
- 5) What does Mrs. Whatsit tell Charles Wallace to beware of?
  - a. *Pride and arrogance*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** bilious, warily, bravado, requisition, neurological, tenacity

- 1) What tone does the Man with the Red Eyes take on when he first communicates with the children?
  - a. *A gentle, kindly one.*
- 2) How does he say he will make things easier for them?
  - a. *He will remove the need to think or make decisions.*
- 3) What does Meg do to release her mind from the Man's spell?
  - a. *Shout "Father!"*
- 4) What does she do to release Charles Wallace the first time he is hypnotized?
  - a. *Tackles him*
- 5) Why can't Charles Wallace taste the food?
  - a. *He is able to keep the Man with the Red Eyes completely out of his mind.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** connotations, sadist, deviate

- 1) How has Camazotz eliminated suffering?
  - a. *By killing everyone who is sick or hurt.*
- 2) How is Charles Wallace able to walk through walls?
  - a. *By rearranging the atoms.*
- 3) What is the boy who had been bouncing the ball wrong doing when the children see him?

- a. *He is locked in a room, being forced to bounce the ball correctly and screaming in pain as he does so.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** envelop, dais, omnipotent, systole, diastole, miasma

- 1) What play is Calvin's quote about the prisoner in the cloven pine from?
  - a. *Shakespeare's The Tempest.*
- 2) What power does Mrs. Who's glasses possess?
  - a. *They can rearrange atoms.*
- 3) What does IT appear as?
  - a. *An oversized brain.*
- 4) How does Meg refute Charles Wallace when he says everyone on Camazotz is equal?
  - a. *She says that "'Like' and 'equal' are not the same."*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** atrophied, corrosive, indentation

- 1) Why were the Murrys and Calvin able to hold out against IT?
  - a. *Because IT is not used to being resisted.*
- 2) Where was Mr. Murry trying to go with his initial tesseract?
  - a. *Mars*
- 3) Why did Mr. Murry have to leave Charles Wallace on Camazotz?
  - a. *He was afraid that Charles' brain would be damaged if he tore him away from IT.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** trepidation, temporal, despondency

- 1) How does Meg know that the beasts are good?
  - a. *The happiness she feels when they hold her.*
- 2) How does Meg feel when her father holds her after she has been with the beasts?
  - a. *Worried and insecure*
- 3) How does Calvin describe the three ladies?
  - a. *As angels, or messengers of God*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** singularly, unadulterated

- 1) What makes Meg's anger go away?
  - a. *Her decision to save Charles Wallace*
- 2) Why can't the Happy Medium see into the future?
  - a. *People have free will.*
- 3) Why is Meg the one who has to go get Charles Wallace?
  - a. *She is the one who knows and loves him.*
- 4) What are Mrs. Which's parting words to Meg?
  - a. *"You have something that IT has not."*
- 5) What allows Meg to be momentarily drawn into IT?
  - a. *Her anger at Charles Wallace.*

# Blessed Marie of New France

## CHAPTER 1

- 1) What year is it at the beginning of the story?
  - a. *It is 1631.*
- 2) How does the Pierre know that Marie is a holy woman?
  - a. *He has seen her praying, and feels that he is in the presence of a saint.*
- 3) What sort of business do the Buissons run?
  - a. *They run a transportation business.*
- 4) What does Claude overhear his uncle say to his aunt?
  - a. *He hears that his mother never really loved him.*
- 5) How old is the oldest novice besides Marie?
  - a. *She is 16.*

## CHAPTER 2

- 1) Who helps Claude get into the school in Rennes?
  - a. *Dom Raymond and the Archbishop help Claude.*
- 2) What does the Novice Mistress say causes Marie's feeling that God is far away?
  - a. *She says the Devil causes Marie's feelings.*
- 3) What does Père Dinet say causes France's interest in Canada?
  - a. *The fur trade is why France is interested in Canada.*
- 4) Why does Mère Marie hesitate to encourage Mère Saint Bernard in her desire to go to Canada?
  - a. *Mère Saint Bernard is young and frail.*
- 5) What is the name of the reports the Jesuits write from Canada?
  - a. *The reports are called Relations.*

## CHAPTER 3

- 1) Why is Mère Marie happy when she hears that she is to head up the school?
  - a. *It will be good practice for teaching in Canada.*
- 2) How does Madame de la Peltrie hear about Mère Marie's mission?
  - a. *She hears about it from Père Poncet.*
- 3) How does Pierre feel when Monsieur Bernières looks at him?
  - a. *He feels as if the Monsieur can read his soul.*
- 4) Besides St. Joseph, who does Mère St. Bernard feels helped her be chosen for the trip?
  - a. *She feels Monsieur Bernières helped her.*
- 5) Why does Madame de la Peltrie have to get a new maid?
  - a. *Her old one did not want to go to Canada.*

## CHAPTER 4

- 1) Why does Mère Marie's sister Claude disapprove of the mission to Canada?
  - a. *She feels that the work is beneath Marie and that it is too dangerous.*
- 2) How old is Mère Marie's son Claude now?
  - a. *He is nineteen.*
- 3) Why does Mère Marie say that it was best that Claude find out about her plans in the way he did?
  - a. *It caused them both suffering which they can offer up.*

- 4) Why does Monsieur Bernières say that it is not time yet to rejoice about Claude's future?
  - a. *He knows that Claude will not be accepted by the Jesuits.*

#### CHAPTER 5

- 1) Which order of nuns is going to start a hospital in Quebec?
  - a. *The Augustinians are going to start a hospital.*
- 2) Does Jean Bernières go to Canada?
  - a. *No, he does not.*
- 3) In which direction off course does the storm blow the ship?
  - a. *It blows the ship north.*
- 4) What do the Native Americans use to make their skin shine?
  - a. *They use bear grease.*
- 5) Which tribe of Native Americans are "troublemakers of the worst sort"?
  - a. *The Iroquois are troublemakers.*

#### CHAPTER 6

- 1) Why is Charlotte upset on the night before they arrive in Quebec?
  - a. *She was not able to keep Madame de la Peltrie's clothes clean.*
- 2) What do the sisters do as soon as they embark from the ship?
  - a. *They kiss the ground.*
- 3) What name does Mère Saint Joseph give to the little cottage?
  - a. *She calls it the Louvre.*

#### CHAPTER 7

- 1) Why is it difficult to find Christian Native American villages like the one in Sillery?
  - a. *Many Native Americans do not generally stay in one place.*
- 2) How will the sisters' work help Christianity to flourish among the Native Americans who do not live in villages?
  - a. *If they learn about Christianity as children, they will keep it with them wherever they go.*
- 3) Who already lives on the island of Montreal?
  - a. *The Huron live on Montreal.*
- 4) For whom is de Maisonneuve preparing the settlement at Montreal?
  - a. *It is being prepared for a newly founded order of hospital nuns.*

#### CHAPTER 8

- 1) To whom do the sisters pray to keep the Montreal settlers safe?
  - a. *They pray to René Goupil.*
- 2) Why does Mère Marie set up a shrine to the Sacred Heart in the convent?
  - a. *Jesus had told her to pray to His Heart when she was in France.*
- 3) Why doesn't Mère Marie feel disappointed that the Native American girls want pretty clothes?
  - a. *She knows that all little girls are like that.*
- 4) What does Mère Marie say Madame de la Peltrie must do in her little house?
  - a. *She must become a great saint.*

#### CHAPTER 9

- 1) How did the fire in the convent start?
  - a. *It was started because one of the sisters left hot coals out in the kitchen.*
- 2) What marvelous skill does Mère Catherine have?

- a. *She nurses the desperately ill back to health.*
- 3) How old is Mère Saint Joseph when she dies?
  - a. *She is thirty-five.*

#### CHAPTER 10

- 1) Why is Bishop de Laval able to convince the King to send more troops to Canada?
  - a. *He is from an aristocratic family and has many connections in court.*
- 2) Who brings the news of the battle at Sault Saint Louis?
  - a. *Two Christian Huron boys bring the news.*
- 3) Who do the Iroquois think must be aiding the men at Sault Saint Louis?
  - a. *They believe it is The Great White Spirit.*
- 4) Where does de Tracy's army go to attack the Iroquois?
  - a. *They go to upstate New York.*

#### CHAPTER 11

- 1) Which nun does Bishop de Laval think was a saint?
  - a. *He thinks Mère Catherine de Saint Augustin was a saint.*
- 2) What is the "liquor question" that Mère Marie prays about?
  - a. *She prays about the settlers trading furs for liquor, causing the Native Americans to go crazy with drunkenness.*
- 3) How old is Mère Marie when she steps down as superior?
  - a. *She is seventy-one.*
- 4) Where does Bishop de Laval go to offer up special petitions?
  - a. *He goes to the shrine of St. Anne de Beaupré.*
- 5) What does Mère Marie teach the Native American children about from her deathbed?
  - a. *She taught them about the resurrection of the body.*

# The Miraculous Medal

## CHAPTERS 1-3

- 1) Describe who awoke Sr. Catherine to tell her that the Blessed Virgin was waiting for her.
  - a. *An angel who looked like a little boy about five years old – blue eyed, golden-haired-dressed in shining white garments.*
- 2) Who did Sr. Catherine confide in?
  - a. *She confided in the convent Chaplain, Fr. Aladel.*
- 3) Did he believe her? Why?
  - a. *No, he did not believe her. He thought she had an overactive imagination because three months earlier she had told him that she had seen the heart of St. Vincent de Paul floating in the air over the silver box in the chapel containing his relics. A week after that she told him that she had seen Our Lord while assisting at Mass.*
- 4) What was Sr. Catherine's mission?
  - a. *Her mission was a special work for souls. She was to make The Miraculous Medal and model it after how Mary had appeared to her.*

## CHAPTERS 4-6

- 1) When Mary appeared to Sr. Laboure again, what did Fr. Aladel tell her to do? Why?
  - a. *Fr. Aladel told Sr. Laboure to be obedient and to forget about these visions because he still didn't believe her.*
- 2) What made Fr. Aladel change his mind?
  - a. *The Blessed Virgin told Sr. Catherine that Fr. Aladel was her servant and that he would fear to displease her. When Sr. Catherine told Fr. Aladel what the Blessed Virgin said, he immediately believed her.*
- 3) What did he do after he changed his mind?
  - a. *Fr. Aladel immediately went to the Archbishop in Paris to tell him of the visions and to get his approval to have the medal made.*
- 4) What was the cause of the dangerous days in France?
  - a. *Two years earlier the revolution began and religious were being persecuted.*

## CHAPTERS 7-9

- 1) Why did the artist have a hard time drawing the picture of the Blessed Virgin Mary?
  - a. *Mary was dressed differently both times she appeared to Sr. Catherine.*
- 2) What do the rays coming from Our Lady's hands represent?
  - a. *Graces that Mary was giving to those who asked for them.*
- 3) How many medals did Fr. Aladel have made the first time? Did he think it would be enough?
  - a. *Fr. Aladel had two thousand medals made. He was afraid he had too many made, but they went quickly.*
- 4) What is the Miraculous Medal prayer that Sr. Catherine wanted everyone to recite daily?
  - a. *O Mary, conceived without sin, pray for us who have recourse to thee.*
- 5) What did Sr. Catherine do to gain the confidence of the old men at Enghien?
  - a. *Sr. Catherine prayed and made all sorts of sacrifices to win their confidence.*
- 6) What story did Sr. Catherine tell old John?
  - a. *She told him the story of her childhood and began to tell him about her own vocation, but he fell asleep before she finished.*
- 7) What did Sr. Catherine do after old John fell asleep?
  - a. *She hid a Miraculous Medal under his mattress.*



## CHAPTERS 10-12

- 1) Why did Sr. Catherine's father want her go to Paris?
  - a. *He wanted her to work in her brother Charles' restaurant as a waitress and hoped she would forget about wanting to be a religious.*
- 2) Where did she go after she failed at being a waitress?
  - a. *She went to her brother Hubert's boarding school for girls.*
- 3) Who was the old man in Sr. Catherine's dreams?
  - a. *It was St. Vincent de Paul, the founder of the Daughters of Charity.*
- 4) What did old John do to help him learn to love God?
  - a. *He agreed to wear the Miraculous Medal around his neck and say the prayer daily.*
- 5) Was Our Lady still appearing to Sr. Catherine?
  - a. *No, she had not appeared to her since she left the Motherhouse.*
- 6) How did Sr. Catherine know what Our Lady had to say?
  - a. *She heard Our Lady's voice.*
- 7) What did Sr. Catherine want Fr. Aladel to tell the people in his sermon?
  - a. *She wanted him to tell the people to ask Our Lady for the grace to love God as she did when she was their age.*

## CHAPTERS 13-15

- 1) What did John ask Sr. Catherine for that would give him peace?
  - a. *He wanted to go to confession and asked for a priest.*
- 2) What did John want to devote himself to doing?
  - a. *John wanted to get the other men in the home to wear the Miraculous Medal.*
- 3) Why did the sisters stop believing that Our Lady appeared to Sr. Catherine?
  - a. *Sr. Catherine was moved from kitchen duty to laundry and linen room duty and the other sisters thought that it was not an important job for someone that Our Lady had appeared to.*
- 4) What did Our Lady want Fr. Aladel to do?
  - a. *Our Lady wanted Fr. Aladel to form a society called The Children of Mary.*
- 5) Why did Alphonse Ratisbonne hate the Catholic Church?
  - a. *He was a Jew and resented the Catholic Church after his brother converted and became a priest.*
- 6) What happened to Alphonse after he started wearing the Miraculous Medal?
  - a. *Our Lady appeared to him and showed him the true state of his soul.*

## CHAPTERS 16-18

- 1) What did Sr. Catherine call the nineteenth century?
  - a. *She called it "The Age of Mary".*
- 2) In what two villages did Our Lady appear to peasant children?
  - a. *Our Lady appeared in La Salette and Lourdes.*
- 3) What became Sr. Catherine's permanent assignment?
  - a. *She was assigned to be in charge of the fifty old men at Enghien.*
- 4) What happened on April 25, 1865?
  - a. *Fr. Aladel died.*
- 5) What was happening in France in 1871?

- a. *There was a revolution. Vicious men were trying to overthrow the government and stamp out all religion. Priests and nuns were being murdered, churches were desecrated and religious communities were forced to close.*
- 6) What was Our Lady's new request for Sr. Catherine?
  - a. *Our Lady wanted a new statue made in the image of her second appearance to Sr. Catherine.*
- 7) Why did Sr. Catherine's health begin to fail?
  - a. *Sr. Catherine's health began to fail because the strain of not being able to obey Our Lady's wishes because she had no one to talk to since Fr. Aladel had died.*

#### CHAPTERS 19-21

- 1) Who did Sr. Catherine want to see in the Paris headquarters of the Priests of the Mission?
  - a. *She wanted to see Fr. Chinchon, the confessor for the Sisters at Enghien.*
- 2) Why couldn't she see him?
  - a. *He had been transferred and a new young priest had taken his place.*
- 3) Who did Our Lady let Sr. Catherine confide in?
  - a. *Our Lady told Sr. Catherine that she could tell Mother Superior everything.*
- 4) Name three of the many favors Sr. Catherine received at the Motherhouse.
  - a. *She saw the heart of St. Vincent de Paul floating in the air. She had seen Our Lord appear to her numerous times at Mass. Our Lady appeared to her twice.*
- 5) Why didn't Sr. Catherine think the statue looked like Our Lady?
  - a. *Sr. Catherine thought that Our Lady was much more beautiful, but what human eye could capture her beauty and what human hand could describe it?*
- 6) What truth of Sr. Catherine's humble life did the people outside the convent realize?
  - a. *The people realized that holiness is not long prayers and great sacrifices, but it is the giving of oneself completely into God's hand for Him to do with as He wills.*
- 7) What was Sr. Catherine's last request to her fellow Sisters?
  - a. *She asked the Sisters to do all in their power to promote devotion to the Miraculous Medal*

# Saint Catherine of Siena

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** medieval, obstinacy, earnest, whim, ecstasies

- 1) In what way did Catherine, while still a very young child, exhibit a special devotion to the Blessed Mother?
  - a. *She would kneel and say the Hail Mary on every step of the steep staircase at home.*
- 2) What did Jacomo, Catherine's father, see that convinced him of his daughter's growing sanctity?
  - a. *While Catherine was praying in the room of her brother Stephen, her father saw a white dove over her head. This took away his doubts as to whether his daughter was truly holy, or only going through what we would today call a "phase."*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** scourged, solitude, hideous, persevere, glistening

- 1) Who were the Mantellate?
  - a. *They were a group of holy women who were not nuns, but live in their own homes, doing good works and participating in the life of the Dominican Order as Tertiaries.*
- 2) What types of penances did Catherine, at this time in her life, undertake? Name at least two. Why did she do things like this?
  - a. *Answers will vary. They may include that Catherine ate less, slept less, scourged herself, and wore a painful iron chain. All this was done in respect for the sufferings of Christ. Catherine reasoned that, if we are the members and He is the head, it is not right for us to go without suffering when He suffered so much.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** affronts, imposter, astray, henceforward, exceedingly

- 1) Who was Fra. Lazzarino? What changes his low opinion of Catherine?
  - a. *This friar asked Catherine to pray for him, and she did. He experienced profound remorse for his lax way of life, and realized this was a grace that had come to him due to Catherine's intercession. He realized she was a true servant of God, and resolved to become a better one himself.*
- 2) How did Andrea treat Catherine, and how did Catherine treat Andrea in return?
  - a. *Catherine took care of Andrea, who was dying of cancer. Andrea, for her part, thought Catherine was a fraud and denounced her to her sisters. At this point, Catherine's own mother said Catherine must not have anything more to do with Andrea. But Catherine, called to serve, continued to care for Andrea just the same.*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** vilest, despondency, gallant, feud, befell

- 1) Who were Lisa Columbini, Messer Matteo, and Fra Tommaso della Fonte?
  - a. *Lisa was Catherine's sister-in-law. Messer Matteo was the rector of the hospital called Misericordia, and Fra Tommaso della Fonte was Catherine's first confessor. They are some of the people mentioned as Catherine's close associates during this period of her life.*
- 2) What did Catherine do for Niccolo di Toldi?
  - a. *Catherine comforted Niccolo when he was about to be executed. The priests had been unable to assist the young man, because he was filled with rage and fear. However,*

*Catherine's great gentleness touched his heart, even in that state. Although he did die, he did not go to Hell, for Catherine's intervention preserved him.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** pestilence, contracted, irresolute, anarchy, tyrants

- 1) Why did Catherine say of the nieces and nephews who had died of the plague, "These, at least, I shall not lose"? Hadn't she lost them already?
  - a. *To Catherine, it is all about Heaven. Although the innocent little children had passed away from the dreaded disease, Catherine was sure of seeing them again in the next life. Since they were innocent, she had not "lost" them to mortal sin--the only loss she really grieved and feared.*
- 2) Who was Sir John Hawkwood, and what effect did correspondence with Catherine have on him?
  - a. *He was an English soldier of fortune, or a man who would fight for anyone who paid him, whether their cause was just or not. After Catherine wrote him a letter, he and his companions decided to engage only in lawful warfare in the future.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** malice, benignity, contemptuous, forgery, timorous

- 1) When Pope Gregory placed Florence under interdict, what were two of its conditions?
  - a. *Answers will vary. The book notes that churches were closed, priests were forbidden to administer the sacraments, and trade with the city was cut off.*
- 2) Who was Count Guillaume de Beaufort, and what did he try to do? Was he successful?
  - a. *The Count was the father of the Pope Gregory. He actually threw himself down on the threshold, in an attempt to keep the pontiff from returning to his rightful place in Rome. Fortunately, he did not succeed.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** plebian, meddle, frail, goaded, bough

- 1) When the interdict had been going on for seventeen months, Catherine stepped forward to encourage people to obey the Pope. How did they treat her for this, and how did she respond to this treatment?
  - a. *The mob began blaming Catherine for the hardships they were suffering, and tried to kill her. Catherine, for her part, was ready to die for the Faith.*
- 2) When the danger was over, why did Catherine actually feel sad?
  - a. *The saint saw this as an opportunity to lay down her life for Christ. When she was not required to do so, she was disappointed. This is the opposite reaction one might expect from an average person whose life has been spared!*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** luxurious, zealous, discord, bloodthirsty, usurped

- 1) Who was Cardinal Robert of Geneva? What new name did he take, and why?
  - a. *Cardinal Robert was the leader of the papal troops in Italy. When people grew tired of following the real pope, Robert took the name of "Clement VII" and became a false, or anti- Pope in rivalry of the real one. This is a highly sinful thing to do.*
- 2) If Urban VI was a good man and wanted what was right, why was Catherine obliged to write him a letter of correction all the same?

- a. *The Pope did not go about making changes charitably. His temper undid all the good he wanted to accomplish. We are to speak the truth, but we are also to speak it in love.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** embarked, vacillating, gaiety, misconception, obliged

- 1) Fra. Raimondo is one of Catherine's holiest and closest friends, and yet he does something that disappoints her greatly, and she rebukes him for it. What was it?
  - a. *Fra. Raimondo was on an errand of the Pope's when danger besets him. Instead of continuing, he stops and seeks the Pope's advice. Catherine doesn't regard this course of action as prudent but rather as cowardly. As the book puts it, "She could not understand anyone who did not share her desire for martyrdom."*
- 2) Through what spiritual sacrifices does Catherine help bring about peace in Rome?
  - a. *Answers will vary. She prays for the people: she is tormented by demons: and she wastes away bodily while offering it all up.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** incessantly, ill-starred, slacken, fragrant, thronged

- 1) What is the Navicella, and what does it have to do with the death of this saint?
  - a. *The Navicella is a painting by the great Giotto, of the "Bark of St. Peter" or the Catholic Church. The Church is frequently thought of as a boat, sailing the storms of this world. Catherine was praying before this painting when she felt, in a dream, the weight of the "ship" on her own shoulders. It felt crushing. Catherine understood that she was to offer up her life for the life of the Church. It is at this point that Catherine's strength drains away, and soon thereafter, she dies.*
- 2) What was Fra. Raimondo doing at the time of Catherine's death, and how does he find out she has passed away?
  - a. *He was saying Mass and preparing to leave for Pisa when he heard an interior voice say, "Fear not: fear not. I am here for your sake: I am in Heaven for you. I will protect and defend you." Fra. Raimondo understood that this was Catherine speaking to him as a person no longer on this earth, but as a member of the Church Triumphant at last.*

# Saint Dominic

## CHAPTER 1

- 1) What causes the famine in Spain?
  - a. *Extreme heat*
- 2) Why is the King of Spain sending ambassadors to Denmark?
  - a. *He wants his son to marry the daughter of the King of Denmark.*
- 3) Why do the Albigensians practice suicide?
  - a. *They believe the body was created by the bad God.*

## CHAPTER 2

- 1) Why does Bishop Diego realize that going to France will have more value than going to the Tartars?
  - a. *It would be an act of obedience.*
- 2) Why is the Abbot shocked at the idea of having women helpers?
  - a. *Their work is priestly work.*

## CHAPTER 3

- 1) What are the two reasons Dominic believes he needs to set up schools?
  - a. *To have a place to educate the young about the true faith, and to have a place where women converts can be safe.*
- 2) Who are the new helpers in the fight against the heresy?
  - a. *Several learned priests of the diocese of Foulques.*
- 3) Where is the chapel in Prouille located?
  - a. *In an out-of-the-way place.*

## CHAPTER 4

- 1) What does the manifestation of the Devil look like?
  - a. *A dog with a long tongue and ox's eyes.*
- 2) How often do the women in the convent fast?
  - a. *Several days a week.*
- 3) What devotion does Dominic feel has brought him success?
  - a. *The devotion to Our Lady in the Rosary.*

## CHAPTER 5

- 1) Why does Count Simon's army fluctuate in size?
  - a. *Soldiers serve in it only long enough to get an indulgence and then leave.*
- 2) What does Dominic sing as he walks into Carcassone?
  - a. *A hymn to Our Lady.*
- 3) Where does Dominic sleep in Carcassone?
  - a. *On his cloak in the middle of the village green.*

## CHAPTER 6

- 1) What sort of vision does the Pope have about both Francis and Dominic?
  - a. *He sees them picking up the Church of St. John Lateran.*
- 2) What Rule do Dominic and his followers decide on?
  - a. *The Rule of St. Augustine.*

- 3) What is Dominic's mode of travel to and from Rome?
  - a. *Walking*

#### CHAPTER 7

- 1) What vision does Dominic have while waiting to meet Pope Honorius?
  - a. *The apostles Peter and Paul telling him to go and preach.*
- 2) Why does Dominic feel it is necessary to disperse his followers as soon as possible?
  - a. *Heresy is everywhere and must be combated.*
- 3) What is the method of studying Scripture practiced by the young monks?
  - a. *They read a short passage, go to the chapel and think about it, then ask Dominic the questions they come up with.*

#### CHAPTER 8

- 1) What does Dominic do when Brother John refuses to go to Paris without any money?
  - a. *He gives him the money and prays that his faith will increase.*
- 2) Where do the monks in Paris and Madrid study?
  - a. *In the universities.*
- 3) What does Dominic tell the men in Germany is the greatest gift they have received?
  - a. *Salvation*

#### CHAPTER 9

- 1) What do members of Dominic's Confraternity promise to do every day?
  - a. *Pray the entire Rosary*
- 2) What does Dominic know is Reginald's reason for going to the Holy Land?
  - a. *To ask Our Lord if he should become a religious.*
- 3) Why doesn't Reginald want to take vows while he is ill?
  - a. *He does not want to die as a religious without having done anything to earn it.*

#### CHAPTER 10

- 1) How do the monks usually procure their food?
  - a. *By begging*
- 2) What kind of school is in Bologna, where Reginald is going to help found a monastery?
  - a. *A famous law school.*
- 3) What devotion becomes more widely appreciated after Dominic raises the boy to life?
  - a. *The Sign of the Cross.*

#### CHAPTER 11

- 1) What practice do the monks at St. Sixtus begin after the angels' visit?
  - a. *Serving the novices before the important monks in the house.*
- 2) Why does Reginald say he gave up his former life to become a monk?
  - a. *He is learning how to love.*

#### CHAPTER 12

- 1) What does Diana tell her grandfather about why the monks live by begging?
  - a. *So they can be dependent on God.*
- 2) Why does Dominic want Reginald to go to Paris?
  - a. *So he can be near the most famous university in Europe.*

- 3) What does Dominic see will happen when Diana tries to enter the Augustinian convent?
  - a. *Her family will drag her out, and she will be crippled.*

### CHAPTER 13

- 1) How many monks are now in the Dominican house in Rome?
  - a. *Over one hundred*
- 2) Who painted the picture of Mary in St. Mary's convent?
  - a. *St. Luke*
- 3) What happened when a Pope had tried to move it to St. John Lateran?
  - a. *It went back to St. Mary's by itself.*
- 4) Who tells Dominic not to give up trying to get the nuns to come together?
  - a. *The Holy Spirit*

### CHAPTER 14

- 1) What do the nuns at St. Mary's realize about their former way of life?
  - a. *That they had been selfish and that others had been doing more to serve God than they.*
- 2) What does Dominic do to the Cardinal after he finds out that Napoleon is dead?
  - a. *Sprinkles Holy Water on him.*
- 3) What does Napoleon say when he wakes up?
  - a. *That he is hungry.*

### CHAPTER 15

- 1) How old was Reginald when he died?
  - a. *In his early thirties.*
- 2) What is the name of the brother who will succeed Dominic?
  - a. *Brother Jordan*
- 3) What does Hyacinth say when Dominic offers to let him enter the order?
  - a. *"How did you know?"*

### CHAPTER 16

- 1) In what year was Dominic born?
  - a. *1170*
- 2) What does Dominic appear as in his mother's vision?
  - a. *A dog carrying a torch through a darkened world.*
- 3) Why is Dominic sad when he first sees Jesus and Mary with members of religious orders?
  - a. *There are no members of his own Order standing there.*

### CHAPTER 17

- 1) How does the Militia of Jesus Christ protect the Church?
  - a. *Spiritually, through prayer, and physically, using weapons if anyone is bodily threatened by heretics.*
- 2) Why was the Bishop of Bologna wary of the Order?
  - a. *He thought it was dangerous to young men's vocations to have them out in the world.*
- 3) What does "*Laudicare, benedicere, praedicare, Veritas*" mean?
  - a. *"To praise, to bless, to preach, the Truth"*



## CHAPTER 18

- 1) What happened when some heretics forced Dominic to throw the manuscripts of his sermons into a fire?
  - a. *They jumped back into his hands.*
- 2) What did Dominic once bring to all the nuns at St. Sixtus after a trip?
  - a. *Spoons as souvenirs.*
- 3) What was Dominic's role as Master of the Sacred Palace?
  - a. *The chief preacher and teacher at the Vatican.*
- 4)

# Saint Hyacinth of Poland

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** Tusculum, Cracow, insistence, Prussia, Lithuania

- 1) Where is Tusculum in relation to Rome?
  - a. *South east of Rome.*
- 2) Who restores the life of the Cardinal's Nephew?
  - a. *Dominic De Guzeman*
- 3) Why does Hyacinth suggest that Dominic send his friars to Poland?
  - a. *"So that northern Europe may be converted" (p. 3)*
- 4) What does Dominic suggest Bishop Ivo do since he has no friars to give to Poland?
  - a. *Allow Hyacinth and Ceslaus to stay and become friars.*
- 5) Who else does Dominic enlist to become friars and true apostles?
  - a. *The bishops lay servants Herman and Henry.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** possessions

- 1) What prompted Dominic to found his order of friars?
  - a. *The outbreak of the Albigensian Heresy.*
- 2) When did Fr. Dominic found his order?
  - a. *In 1215*
- 3) Who was Father Tancred?
  - a. *The prior of Santa Sabina.*
- 4) What does Dominic tell Herman to do in response to his troubles?
  - a. *Go to his mother, meaning the Virgin Mary.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** mendicant, conscience, stalwart, Cistercians

- 1) What year did Christianity spread to Europe?
  - a) *965 A.D.*
- 2) Who was Prince Mieszko?
  - a) *The most notable polish monarch who, in allying himself with the Christian country of Bohemia (by marrying Princess Dubravka and being baptized), contributed to the spread of Christianity in Poland.*
- 3) What was the most important thing that Prince Mieszko did during his reign?
  - a) *Prince Mieszko placed all of Poland under the protection of the Pope. Henceforth the country was considered to belong to the civilized western world, as opposed to Russia and other territories of the East. It could not be invaded by anyone, for any purpose whatsoever, without incurring the disapproval of the Holy See."(pp. 27-28)*
- 4) How long will it take for the friars to travel from Rome to Cracow?
  - a) *Two months.*
- 5) When did St. Dominic die?
  - a) *August 6<sup>th</sup> 1221*

## CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** preaching, monastery, convent, lingered

- 1) What does Brother Henry say about the size of a prayer?

- a. *"But it isn't the length of the prayer that counts, Father! It's the way it's said. I'm very sure that God hears any prayer which comes from the heart, no matter how short it is." (p. 34)*
- 2) List the cities that the brothers must travel through before reaching Poland.
  - a. *Orvieto, Siena, Florence, Bologna, and Venice.*
- 3) While traveling, who else did the friars meet?
  - a. *The Friars Minor, founded by Francis of Assisi.*

## CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** vocation, cloistered, admission, solemn, eagerness

- 1) Where do Hyacinth and his brother friars stop before arriving in Cracow?
  - a. *In Friesach*
- 2) How many applicants did hyacinth get for his order in Friesach?
  - a. *Fifty*
- 3) What was the prayer that Brother Herman makes?
  - a. *Sweetest Jesus, grant that I may praise with my mouth, cherish with my heart and honor by my actions Thy most loving Mother and mine. (p. 48)*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** entreated, piteously, frailty, instruct

- 1) What does Hyacinth prophesy?
  - a. *That Ceslaus will spread the faith in Bohemia, Silesia and Germany while he will work in Poland, Ruthenia, Lithuania and Prussia.*
- 2) Why do the brothers travel on foot?
  - a. *Their vow of poverty.*
- 3) What does Hyacinth say when he leaves Brother Henry in Moravia?
  - a. *Not my will but Thine be done!(page 57)*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** amazement, duke, voluntary, consternation

- 1) What did Duke Leszek see as Hyacinth approached Cracow?
  - a. *The Virgin Mary blessing Hyacinth from the Heavens.*
- 2) Which church do the nobles of Cracow give to Hyacinth for his order?
  - a. *The Church of the Holy Trinity.*
- 3) What are the three types of members that Dominic founds?
  - a. *1. The preaching friars and lay brothers. 2. cloistered nuns, 3.lay people.*
- 4) What is the Way of the Cross that Bishop Ivo explains to Duke Leszek?
  - a. *Bishop Ivo explains the prideful fall by Adam and Eve which lead to sickness, death and darkness. By becoming unfit for paradise, they had to learn the meaning of pain and work. Though Christ died to redeem our Original sin, we must still strive to align our will with the will of God.*
- 5) When was St. Stanislaus born?
  - a. *In 1030.*
- 6) How was St. Stanislaus martyred and in what year?
  - a. *He was killed by King Boleslaus while performing the Holy Sacrifice of the Mass in 1079.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** intercession, pilgrimage, legate, implore

- 1) To whom does Hyacinth attribute the miracle of the drowned boy Peter?
  - a. *St. Stanislaus*
- 2) What miracle happens in 1224?
  - a. *The Blessed Virgin appears to Hyacinth.*
- 3) What does Mary ask Hyacinth in return for Christianizing Northern Europe?
  - a. *To bring her more souls.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** scruples, ransomed, pagan, formidable

- 1) What does Hyacinth do at the Vistula?
  - a. *The river subsides and he walks across. He also walks back and uses his cloak to transport the other brothers.*
- 2) What does Hyacinth request from the Duke?
  - a. *The Island of Gedan*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** establishment, recruiting, enormous, accordance

- 1) What does Florian compare Hyacinth's work to?
  - a. *The Northern Lights*
- 2) Who did Hyacinth help at the end of chapter 10?
  - a. *Princess Anna of Kiev*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** hither, homage, patriarch, novitiate

- 1) What was one of the rituals that the pagans would perform?
  - a. *Offering sacrifices to idols made of iron and stone.*
- 2) Who are the Knights of the Cross?
  - a. *Soldiers of German birth and religion.*
- 3) What does Hyacinth do when he arrives on the island of Dnieper?
  - a. *He drives out a half-man, half-animal creature from the woods.*

## CHAPTER 12

**VOCABULARY:** jealousy, meddling, depose, alabaster

- 1) Why does Hyacinth leave Kiev?
  - a. *So that the heretical priests will not depose the Crown Prince.*
- 2) Who is Batu Kahn?
  - a. *The grandson of Genghis Khan, a Tartar Chieftain who is invading Europe.*

## CHAPTER 13

**VOCABULARY:** compline, providence, radiance, blemish

- 1) What was the miracle performed during the Feast of Saint Margaret?
  - a. *The crops had been flattened by hail damage. Hyacinth asked the farmers to pray throughout the night. He spent the night in the chapel praying continuously. In the morning, the farmers found their crops had been restored.*

- 2) What miracle took place after St. Stanislaus' death?
  - a. *The Cathedral gathers his body parts for burial and later found that they had joined together without scar or blemish.*
- 3) In what year did the Tartars storm Kiev?
  - a. *In 1240.*

#### CHAPTER 14

**VOCABULARY:** embraced, ominous, chieftains, predicted

- 1) What was the first miracle in this chapter?
  - a. *Hyacinth was able to carry the Blessed Sacrament and the fifty five pound statue with no difficulty.*
- 2) What stops the Tartars from killing the friars?
  - a. *The statue of Mary and the Blessed Sacrament which Hyacinth is carrying.*
- 3) What was the third miracle?
  - a. *The brothers cross the water and escape from Kiev.*

#### CHAPTER 15

**VOCABULARY:** resounded, consecrate, astounding, episcopacy

- 1) After curing the blind twins, what did Hyacinth tell their mother to do in thanksgiving?
  - a. *Consecrate them to the Blessed Mother.*
- 2) What was the name that the people of Poland gave Hyacinth?
  - a. *"The Apostle of the North"*
- 3) What year was Bishop Stanislaus canonized?
  - a. *1253*

#### CHAPTER 16

**VOCABULARY:** grievous, imploringly, astonishment, paten

- 1) What was the psalm that Hyacinth uttered before his death?
  - a. *The Thirtieth.*

# Saint John Bosco

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** \*dominant, treatises, intuition, \*philanthropy, \*sarcasm, sovereign, liberalism, \*veracity, suffice, \*hamlet, forbearance, \*remonstrance, unparalleled, dignity, \*interlocutor, raiment, gamboling, prefaced, \*inimitable, \*inexorable, urchin, asset, supplementary, contemptuous, \*averred, retorted, canticles, decrepit, harpsichord

- 1) Give an example of the kindness of Margaret Bosco.
  - a. *Answers may vary but could tell of the love she had for her stepson even though he was a difficult person or that she shared with those who needed food or shelter even though she was also poor.*
- 2) Why didn't Anthony want John to go to school?
  - a. *He had not gone to school so he didn't think it was necessary, and he wanted John to continue helping on the farm.*
- 3) What did John understand from his dream?
  - a. *He understood that Our Lord wanted him to become a priest.*
- 4) How did John learn Latin?
  - a. *Don Calosso, the parish priest, taught him.*
- 5) How did a tailor help John?
  - a. *He taught him to be a tailor and also taught him liturgical music and how to play musical instruments.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** \*millet, convey, indiscipline, asserted, proceeds, \*sanctimonious, significant, motto, prospered, lodgings, alcove, \*averse, \*piqued, satirically, \*equilibrium, pretext, \*illusionist, superficial, \*abashed, potent, philosophy, \*morose, cholera, eloquence, \*extemporizing, improvise, diction, \*dubiously, pretentiousness, vivacious

- 1) Name two ways John Bosco helped to pay for his education in Chieri.
  - a. *He tutored a boy and he worked at a restaurant.*
- 2) How did John get the acrobat to quit doing his tricks when the boys were going to religion class?
  - a. *He challenged the acrobat in acrobatic feats and won all of them.*
- 3) Why did John decide to become a secular priest instead of joining a religious order?
  - a. *He spoke to the holy priest, Don Cafasso who told him he should become a secular priest.*
- 4) What good advice did his mother give John before he went to the seminary?
  - a. *She told him to be a good priest and take the Blessed Mother as his Queen.*
- 5) Why did John decide he wanted to work with poor boys rather than rich ones?
  - a. *He felt he could help the poor boisterous boys more than the rich ones.*
- 6) In his dream, how did the Blessed Mother tell him to win the outcasts?
  - a. *She told him he could only do it gentleness and kindness.*
- 7) What did his mother tell him to think of after he was ordained a priest?
  - a. *She told him to think of nothing but the salvation of souls.*

### CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** vagrant, oratory, \*autocratic, \*benevolence, marchioness, indignant, corridor, \*emerged, profaning, \*invincible, provisions, accommodation, propaganda, \*monomania, \*idealist, intuition, premises, \*intervals, chink, ecstatic, convalescence, \*quasi, tentative, implements, \*frugal, anxiety, \*protégés, subsidy

- 1) Why did Don Cafasso want Don Bosco to go back to the Institute in Turin?
  - a. *He wanted him go complete his priestly formation.*
- 2) What horrible condition did Don Bosco find among the boys in Turin?
  - a. *They were running wild, and many of them were imprisoned for minor crimes.*
- 3) In what two ways did Don Bosco help the boys in Turin?
  - a. *He started giving them catechism lessons and later began to give evening classes to educate them.*
- 4) Why did Don Bosco and his boys have to relocate so often?
  - a. *They grew in number and were rowdy so neighbors didn't want them around.*
- 5) How was Don Bosco cured of pneumonia?
  - a. *Don Borel told him to pray for himself, and he began his recovery.*
- 6) What success did Don Bosco achieve when his mother and he went back to Turin?
  - a. *He began teaching the students academic lessons and did so well that the government gave him a subsidy.*

### CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** \*neutralized, disreputable, exorbitant, refectory, suppressed, \*obdurate, excursion, averred, \*rudiments, \*indefatigable, \*abject, incessant, conceived, dialogues, adept, conscientious, eloquence, \*oratorical, invariable, \*fiasco, impetuous, reserved, \*aspirations, \*coercion, abhorrent, \*serpentine, rebuffs, disarming

- 1) What happened when Don Bosco took ten ruffians to the Oratory to sleep in the loft?
  - a. *They stole the bedding and left.*
- 2) How was Don Bosco able to get the money needed to buy Pinardi's house?
  - a. *Donations came from several people.*
- 3) When Don Bosco's mother became discouraged because of all of the work and trouble, what did he do to make her want to stay?
  - a. *He pointed to the crucifix on the wall.*
- 4) Why did the boys like Don Bosco so much?
  - a. *He not only took care of them: he did it with great love.*
- 5) How did the boys help during the cholera epidemic?
  - a. *They took care of the sick and dying.*
- 6) What did Don Bosco do when it appeared that the drought would not end after the people had prayed so hard about it, and what happened?
  - a. *He prayed to the Blessed Mother telling her it was not for his honor but for hers that the prayers of the people should be answered, and a storm broke to end the drought.*

### CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** enterprise, nucleus, \*approbation, persevere, \*intrepid, troublous, surmount, \*cudgels, adversaries, \*soutane, feigned, cordiality, assailants, \*inscribed, antidote, contrived, \*prostrate, gout, \*formidable, antechamber, preoccupied, obstacle, municipal, counteract, \*bursar, accosted, livery, \*edifice, \*apex, acclamation

- 1) Who was the priest who was to follow Don Bosco as head of his order?
  - a. *Michael Rua became the second head of Don Bosco's order.*
- 2) In what way did Dominic Savio help Don Bosco?

- a. *He was always joyful and played games with the rowdiest of the boys giving them a good example, which led them to go to Confession.*
- 3) Who were the Waldensians?
  - a. *They were an anti-Catholic group who tried to destroy Don Bosco and his organization by writing and saying untruthful things about him.*
- 4) To whom did Don Bosco pray before healing people?
  - a. *He prayed to Our Lady, Help of Christians.*
- 5) On what did Don Bosco rely for the money he needed to build his church?
  - a. *He relied on Divine Providence.*

## CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** \*inimitable, magistrates, reputable, \*complacently, amiably, \*dubiously, entrenched, \*peritonitis, estranged, \*stupefaction, incredulity, \*acquiescence, \*interminable, notable, inimitably, \*salutary, indignant, fervent, epilepsy, hypocrisy, fervor, profound, \*impetus, ciborium, evident, anecdote, \*paramount, avowals

- 1) How was Don Bosco able to turn the hearts of the disreputable young men in Valdocco?
  - a. *He did it by his kindness and the love he showed them.*
- 2) What did Don Bosco tell Albert would happen to him if he did not go to Confession to him?
  - a. *He told Albert he would want him to hear his Confession before he died and father would not be there.*
- 3) Name three miracles Don Bosco performed.
  - a. *He cured a paralyzed woman, a blind girl, an epileptic doctor, a crippled boy, a deaf mute, and a general. He also fed 300 boys with fifteen rolls of bread and gave Holy Communion to 500 with a nearly empty Ciborium.*
- 4) What happened to cause Francis Dalmazzo to change his mind about leaving the Oratory?
  - a. *He witnessed the miracle of feeding 300 boys with fifteen rolls of bread, and when all were fed there were still fifteen rolls left.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** \*conclave, submission, cordiality, irate, \*imperious, obsessed, steadfastness, invariably, surety, \*profound, \*panegyrics, complied, \*eloquence, elementary, \*abstruse, simulated, \*traversed, shrift, \*formidable, \*sedulously, ascetic, consequent, \*porphyry, aristocracy, façade, eloquent, notables, besieged

- 1) What did Don Bosco pray for most?
  - a. *His one long prayer was for souls.*
- 2) What did he predict to Cardinal Pecci when he was in Rome and did it happen?
  - a. *He predicted Cardinal Pecci would be elected pope, and he became Pope Leo XIII.*
- 3) Who was Grigio?
  - a. *Grigio was a mysterious dog who protected Don Bosco from those who wanted to hurt him.*
- 4) How did Pope Leo XIII manage to get the Church of the Sacred Heart in Rome built?
  - a. *He put Don Bosco in charge of it, and he went to France and raised the money needed.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** hostility, \*incipient, mandate, compromising, inconsistent, \*arduous, averted, \*elicited, inquisitors, \*insidious, monarchical, tyrant, \*calumniating, \*sedition, inquisitorial, reactionary, subordinates, malicious, \*arbitrarily, destitute, provisionally, \*rigmarole, degenerated, \*approbation, assurance, distortion, \*disseminated, tribulation, Infirmities, affliction

- 1) Why did Don Bosco write to the King about passing the law to abolish all the convents in Italy?



- a. *He had a dream that the Queen Mother and the Queen would die, and he took it as a warning that this would happen if the law passed.*
- 2) What happened after the law passed?
  - a. *The Queen Mother, the Queen, and the King's brother died after the passage of the law.*
- 3) Why were the police sent to the Oratory?
  - a. *Rumors were that there was ammunition and the boys were being trained for war. They were looking for anything that would show Don Bosco was working against the government.*
- 4) How did the offices of education try to close Don Bosco's schools?
  - a. *They refused to give the teachers certificates that were necessary for teaching.*
- 5) What was Don Bosco's true mission?
  - a. *His mission was to take care of his boys and help prisoners and people in hospitals.*
- 6) What did Don Bosco say when people told him he should rest?
  - a. *He said, "We will rest in Heaven."*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** periodically, \*predecessors, filial, \*evasively, vicariate, \*arduous, heritage, consolations, injunctions, \*chronicles, infallible, \*indefatigable, \*efficacious, \*amelioration, duration, \*lucidity, incapacity, \*serenity, \*inculcating, delirium

- 1) How did Don Bosco learn about the young ladies who wanted to be of service without becoming nuns?
  - a. *He met Don Pestarino who told him about them.*
- 2) After Don Bosco got permission to found the order of women, what was it named?
  - a. *It was named Daughters of Our Lady, Help of Christians.*
- 3) What was Don Bosco's advice to the Order's missionary priests?
  - a. *He told them to think of nothing but souls, be kind to the sick and old, be loyal to superiors, and trust in the power of the Holy Eucharist and the Blessed Mother.*
- 4) What important person returned to Italy to see Don Bosco before he died?
  - a. *Bishop John Cagliero returned to Italy to be with Don Bosco.*
- 5) Just before he died, what did Don Bosco want his boys to be told?
  - a. *He wanted them to know he would see them in Paradise and that frequent Communion and devotion to Our Lady would be their safeguard.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** \*rectitude, \*preliminaries, \*dado, \*eloquent, \*apposite, \*mediator, \*indispensable, \*tenure, \*elapse, \*interim

- 1) When was Don Bosco canonized?
  - a. *He was canonized on Easter Sunday, 1934.*
- 2) At the Canonization of Don Bosco, who said that Don Bosco was "one more proof that the greatest diplomat is the man of prayer—a lesson which the world has still to learn today."?
  - a. *Crown Prince de Vecchi made that statement.*
- 3) Who continued with Don Bosco's mission after his death?
  - a. *Don Michael Rua continued with the mission.*

# Saint John Masias

## CHAPTERS 1 – 2

**VOCABULARY:** solitary, parched, garb, timidly, patron, radiance, swooped, drab, glimmer, weatherbeaten, ominous, adrift, raged

- 1) What is John's real name? Why does he use a different one?
  - a. *His real name is John d'Arcos. Because his father is dead, he uses his uncle's name instead.*
- 2) What does St. John the Evangelist tell John Masias about his sister, when John Masias worries about how she will get along without him?
  - a. *St. John the Evangelist assures John Masias that he need not fear doing the will of God, because Our Blessed Mother will look after his sister Mary.*

## CHAPTERS 3 – 4

**VOCABULARY:** conviction, glimpses, pastry, new-found, stifled, agile, vocation, courtesy, notion, gossip, trifle, accurate, gazing, luxuriant, benediction, instance

- 1) What trick does the baker in Seville try to play on John? Why doesn't the trick work?
  - a. *The baker asks John to watch his wares for a little while. The two men come and beat John up, and rob the stand. The baker comes back and is furious, blaming John for what has happened. A priest named Father Peter, however, intervenes. He explains to John that this is a common trick. The men who beat him up were actually the baker's sons. The idea was to make John pay for the loss of the baked goods, when it wasn't really his fault in the first place.*
- 2) What two dangers does Father Prior caution John about, if John should decide to undertake the difficult journey to the New World?
  - a. *Father warns John that he could be shipwrecked or contract a disease. John, however, is undaunted. He is convinced that in traveling to the New World, he is doing the will of God and that God Himself will protect him.*

## CHAPTERS 5 – 6

**VOCABULARY:** indifference, scowled, console, extraordinary, milestone, blotted out, crouching, reparation, regime, engage in, sacristan, raiment, prostrate, reverently

- 1) What does John do for the Indians he meets along the way? What do they do for him?
  - a. *John teaches the Indians the Sign of the Cross and tries to tell them about God. In return, they provide him with food, warn him about which plants and berries to avoid, and give him a mule.*
- 2) How is John dressed when Brother Paul lets him into the little wooden house by the gate? Why is he dressed this way?
  - a. *John is dressed in a woolen blanket, such as a poor Indian might wear. He explains to Brother Paul that he exchanged clothes with a beggar when he left the ranch of Peter Menacho for the last time.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** plagued, sly, encounters, glistening, uppermost, novice, withdrawn, pagan, devoutly, chant, shabbily, wretchedness

- 1) Why did John frequently have a bruised eye or a cut lip?
  - a. *The Devil often attacked him, even physically.*
- 2) What does the old woman ask John to give her? How is he able to provide her with this item?

- a. *The woman is in dire need of a coat. The chances of the Dominicans having women's clothing on hand are slight. John Masias prays to his patron saint, John the Evangelist, and finds just the right kind of coat for the woman in a chest.*

#### CHAPTERS 8 – 9

**VOCABULARY:** ardently, marveling, aptly, unlettered, persecutions, emphatically, atonement, suitable, in vain, bankrupt, harsh, venerated, plight, predicament, muster, crestfallen, contrite, doleful

- 1) When John compares the Body of Christ to a chain, who is the "lock"?
  - a. *John Masias styles Christ Himself as the "lock."*
- 2) When Don Francisco de Bustamante refuses to help the poor, what is John's reaction? Does John become excessively angry with him, declare him to be an enemy, or tell others about the wicked thing Don Francisco has done? What does John do for Don Francisco?
  - a. *John Masias takes Peter and calmly goes away. He does not become agitated about what happens, but trusts that God will provide in another way. Far from hating Don Francisco or entertaining any negative thoughts about him, John Masias says a Rosary for him.*

#### CHAPTERS 10 – 11

**VOCABULARY:** muffled, ejaculations, prosperous, abruptly, impudence, escorting, reddened, incredulously, persevere, plea, exhibitions, cringed, staggered, genuine, severe, pertaining to

- 1) What are some ways in which John Masias helps the Poor Souls in Purgatory? Name two.
  - a. *Answers will vary. Possible responses include: sprinkling holy water on the ground, offering ejaculatory prayers, and going to Mass.*
- 2) When John Masias serves food to the poor, he kneels. Why?
  - a. *John explains to Captain de Espina that "when people came to him for help, (John) did not see just a needy man or woman. He saw Christ." John kneels before the poor as he would before the tabernacle.*

#### CHAPTERS 12 – 13

**VOCABULARY:** intercede, pious, confessor, accord, unbecoming, desperation, prompted, remote, vigils, inquired, besieged, glittering, forbade, obtain, constantly, agony, merits, bonds

- 1) Anthony de Alarcon, Alonso Martin, and Doctor Carrasco receive an unusual visitor, sent by John Masias to beg for alms for the poor. Describe the visitor and his behavior.
  - a. *These three are among the people of Lima to whom John Masias regularly sends a donkey. The animal agreed to go out begging by itself, collecting the supplies that John was then able to distribute among the needy. Once, when someone tried to steal what the donkey had collected, he bit and kicked the would-be thief.*
- 2) What does Father Blaise de Acosta want to do for John? What does John ask him to do instead?
  - a. *Father Blaise wanted to know if John wanted something special to eat, or if there was anyone in particular he desired to see. Instead, John asks to hear Holy Mass one last time.*

#### CHAPTER 14

**VOCABULARY:** immense, heresies, discretion, eloquence, astonished, embrace

- 1) John Lopez gets a big surprise. What is it?
  - a. *When John Lopez holds the hand of John Masias, now deceased and in his coffin, Lopez finds that the hand is warm, like that of a living person. He also smells a beautiful fragrance. Either of these experiences is an acceptable answer.*

- 2) Brother Dionysus is also surprised by something. Describe what happens to him.
  - a. *Brother Dionysus is worried about how he will be able to take John Masias' place as gatekeeper, distributing goods to the needy. He prays for the intercession of John Masias, and receives a letter by special delivery. The letter contains a great deal of money. John Masias had appeared to a wealthy mine owner in a dream and had informed him of Brother Dionysus' concern.*

#### **EXTRA CREDIT**

- 1) Who is St. Martin de Porres? See Mary Fabyan Windeatt's biography *Saint Martin de Porres: The Story of the Little Doctor of Lima, Peru*, or another resource.
  - a. *St. Martin de Porres was a contemporary of John Masias. In fact, the two were friends. The son of a white nobleman and a poor black woman, Martin became a Dominican tertiary famous for his gifts of healing, his love of animals, and his great sanctity.*
- 2) Who is St. Rose of Lima? See Mary Fabyan Windeatt's biography *Saint Rose of Lima: The Story of the First Canonized Saint of the Americas*, or another resource.
  - a. *St. Rose of Lima lived in the same area as did John Masias and Martin de Porres. Martin she knew personally, but she had already died by the time John Masias came to Peru. Rose lived with and cared for her own parents, and heroically met the needs of the poor in a land in which the gap between wealthy and poverty-stricken was an enormous one.*
- 3) What does Father Gonzalez de Guzman mean by the terms *Church Militant*, *Church Suffering*, and *Church Triumphant*?
  - a. *Father is using the traditional terms referring to the Church on earth, the poor souls in Purgatory, and the saints in Heaven. Together, they are called the Church Universal. For a discussion of these concepts, see Father John Hardon's The Catholic Catechism: A contemporary Catechism of the Teachings of the Catholic Church (p. 267).*

# Saint Monica

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** incense, sultry, flagon, reproved, exile

- 1) When Monica was a young girl, she was inspired by the story of a Roman martyr called Perpetua. What exactly did the Romans want Perpetua to do, and why did she refuse to do it?
  - a. *They wanted her to throw incense on the brazier. This was an act of worship towards the pagan gods. That is why Perpetua would not do it. She knew it would be the same thing as denying Christ.*
- 2) What does Monica mean when, after hearing the story of the young martyr Perpetua, she draws a long breath and comments, "So weak and yet so strong"? In what sense does this observation come to apply also to Monica herself?
  - a. *Perpetua was weak in the sense that she was only a young woman, without means or social standing, at the time of her martyrdom. She had not the physical prowess to overcome the gladiator that took her life, nor the political clout with which to influence Hilarion, the Roman Governor, on her own behalf. Her strength was spiritual--that of a true Catholic--and it was enough to win her the victor's crown.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** votaries, shamefacedly, ignoble, reproachful, stifle

- 1) If Monica did not know Patricius, was not his age, and would have preferred a Christian for a husband in the first place, why on earth did she marry him?
  - a. *In those days, things were very different for women. Oftentimes, the choice of whom to marry, or whether to marry at all, was not up to the woman herself. Marriages were arranged. This was the case for Monica, and there was little she could do about it. But there was one thing she can and did do, and that was to trust in God. In fact, conditions for women did not essentially improve until Christianity itself began to spread throughout the world, convincing people that women too are children of God and--while they have a different role in His plan--are equal in dignity and worth to men.*
- 2) When Monica asked the other young wives, "Are you sure your own tongue is not to blame?" was she saying that it is all right for women to be abused?
  - a. *No. We must understand St. Monica's attitude carefully, in the context of Catholic teaching. The Catechism insists that abuse of any kind is morally wrong. Catholic wives, like all other people, are to be treated with dignity and respect. Monica was simply pointing out to her friends that no one is without fault, and that her own approach of showing patience and charity towards the sinner, while hating the sin, is the best way.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** catechumens, loathing, entreaties, indefinitely, bondage

- 1) What was young Augustine's attitude towards his schoolwork? How was he treated because of this attitude?
  - a. *Although he was intelligent, Augustine did not like the tedious aspects of studying. He was beaten for this.*
- 2) What does Monica say about the treatment her son receives? How does this relate to her advice, given to other young wives in Chapter 2?
  - a. *Monica tells Augustine that, if he does not do his schoolwork, a beating is what he must*

*expect. This sounds harsh indeed to modern ears. Is the saint implying that abuse is a good thing? Again, no--Monica's attitude towards the beatings Augustine received, like her attitude towards ill treatment of her fellow young wives, must be interpreted in light of its social context. Just as she was urging young wives to examine their own consciences, Monica is here urging Augustine to be diligent in doing his schoolwork. As she does in her own family, even though it is headed by a pagan, Monica urges us to trust in Divine Providence, regardless of what is going on around us.*

#### CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** pang, faltered, culprits, alluring, fetters

- 1) Is a "saint-in-the-making" immune to loneliness, misunderstandings, and other painful experiences in this world?
  - a. *No. Monica undergoes all of these trials, and more.*
- 2) To what experiences in the life of St. Monica does this chapter's title, "New Joys, New Sorrow" refer?
  - a. *While, to Monica's great joy, her husband now desires to become a Christian, her eldest child Augustine seems to be drifting ever further from the truth. However, throughout it all, Monica herself continues to rely on God and to trust in the goodness of His plan.*

#### CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** escapades, headstrong, self-conquest, coarse, enmity

- 1) What were conditions like in Carthage, when Augustine was sent there to study? Name two negative influences he would have encountered.
  - a. *Answers will vary. Points to look for include violent gladiatorial contests, the prevalence of influences from Eastern religions, and immoral theatrical productions.*
- 2) In Carthage, what names were given to students who went around breaking things, in order to intimidate instructors with whom they did not agree?
  - a. *Such people were known as "smashers" or "upsetters."*

#### CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** solacing, partake, conviction, infinite, serene

- 1) Even though Augustine encountered many negative influences in his pagan education, it held glimmers of the truth as well. Which pagan philosopher inspired Augustine to seek wisdom, even though Augustine considered the Sacred Scriptures inferior in style to the writings of this philosopher?
  - a. *Augustine was influenced in a good way by Cicero.*
- 2) What types of activities did Monica engage in after the death of her husband Patricius? If she had not cared so much about God and other people, in what other way might she have handled her grief?
  - a. *Monica helped out at hospitals and assisted in preparing the dead for a decent burial. She did not sit at home feeling sorry for herself.*

#### CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** grieve, attentively, transcribing, heresy, retorted

- 1) Why does Augustine leave his mother's home to go and stay with a family friend?
  - a. *For once, Monica loses patience with him, declaring she will not have her own son under her roof as long as he holds to the doctrines of Manichaeism.*

- 2) Describe Monica's dream. How does she interpret it, and how does Augustine interpret it? Which of their interpretations proves to be correct?
  - a. *Monica dreams that she is standing in sorrow on a plank of wood. A young man asks her why she is sad. She explains that she is crying because she has lost her son, Augustine, in the sense that he has become a heretic. The young man tells Monica to cheer up, because Augustine will come to stand where she herself is standing. Augustine himself, informed of the dream, thinks it means Monica will come to embrace Manichaeism as he himself has. Monica disagrees. She points out that the young man said Augustine will come to where she is, not vice versa. Monica, of course, turns out to be right.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** vague, patron, century, lifelong, philosophy

- 1) Why does Augustine encourage his mother to go and pray at the chapel of St. Cyprian?
  - a. *Augustine sends his mother to the chapel so that he can treacherously leave for Rome, after he has specifically promised her he will not do so.*
- 2) Why did Augustine want to go to Rome in the first place, and why didn't Monica want him to go? In what sense does it turn out to be God's will that he make this journey, even though many of Monica's fears about the place prove to be well-founded?
  - a. *Augustine thought Rome would be a big improvement over Carthage. For one thing, there were no "smashers" allowed, so he would at least be allowed to attend his classes in peace. Monica didn't want her son to go to a city in which--despite being the center of Church life--moral corruption ran rampant in daily life. She was justly afraid that, in such an environment, Augustine might go from bad to worse. God, however, realized all of this and meant everything for Augustine and Monica's own good. In Rome, Augustine was destined to meet Ambrose and others, who would be used as God's instruments in helping him repent his sins and return to the true Faith.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** furnished, beseeching, testimony, self-indulgence, scarcely

- 1) When Augustine first went to hear Ambrose speak, was it because he was interested in becoming a Catholic?
  - a. *No, it wasn't. Augustine had heard that Ambrose was an excellent speaker, and he wanted to hear the way Ambrose expressed things. He was not at this point particularly interested in what Ambrose was expressing.*
- 2) Who was Victorinus? What impact does his story have on Augustine?
  - a. *Victorinus was an old man who had been a pagan all his life, but wanted to convert to Christianity. Afraid of what his friends would say, he put off baptism for a long time. But when he did decide to be baptized, he made his profession of faith publicly, to make up for it. Augustine was stung in conscience to hear of Victorinus' courage, realizing that he himself was still holding back.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** harmony, logic, fortunate, admiration, moderation

- 1) When Augustine and Alypius go to Milan to with the intention of becoming Catholics, under whom do they study?
  - a. *They study under Ambrose himself. Augustine, it seems, has become interested in what Ambrose has to say after all.*

- 2) Why does Augustine congratulate his mother on “having reached the heights of philosophy in a single bound,” when Monica is not an educated person as he is?
  - a. *Monica realizes, as a Christian, what it took Augustine many years of study to realize--that a man who “wants what is good and has it, is happy,” while he who “wants what is bad is not happy, even if he has it.”*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** marveled, unconscious, trembling, reproachful, handmaid

- 1) Why doesn't Monica--who realizes, as does everyone else, that she is dying--insist on being buried in Tagaste near her husband Patricius? What does she insist is more important than this?
  - a. *She explains that her place of burial is not significant, as long as her children promise to pray for her soul at the altar of God wherever they may be. Her human attachment to Patricius is less, in her estimation, than her desire for God and for reunion with her husband in Heaven.*
- 2) Why doesn't Augustine cry when his mother passes away?
  - a. *He declares that her death was such a blessed one, that sorrow wasn't called for.*



# Saint Thomas Aquinas

## CHAPTERS 1-2

- 1) What did Thomas' parents want him to be?
  - a. *They wanted him to be a Benedictine priest and become the Abbot of Monte Cassino.*
- 2) Why was Thomas sent to Naples?
  - a. *He was sent to Naples to get a good education to prepare him to become the Abbot of Monte Cassino.*
- 3) With which orders of priests did he become familiar in Naples?
  - a. *He became familiar with the Franciscans and Dominicans.*
- 4) What decision did he make about his vocation when he was in Naples?
  - a. *He decided God wanted him to become a Dominican.*

## CHAPTERS 3-4

- 1) Why was Thomas' mother so upset that he wanted to become a Dominican?
  - a. *The Dominicans were beggars, so she was embarrassed: she preferred the important job of being Abbot at Monte Cassino.*
- 2) What did Thomas' brothers do when he was on his way to Paris?
  - a. *They took soldiers and took him home by force.*
- 3) What did Thomas do when he was imprisoned in the tower?
  - a. *He prayed and memorized most of the Bible.*
- 4) Under whom did Thomas study in Cologne?
  - a. *He studied under Father Albert. (Later Father Albert became St. Albert the Great).*
- 5) What nickname did the other students give Thomas and why?
  - a. *They called him the "Dumb Ox" because they thought he was not at all smart.*

## CHAPTERS 5-6

- 1) How did Thomas and Father Albert get to Paris?
  - a. *They walked 1500 miles and begged for food.*
- 2) Who was Thomas' good Franciscan friend?
  - a. *St. Bonaventure was Thomas' friend.*
- 3) What is the *Summa Theologica*?
  - a. *It is Saint Thomas' most important work that explains Catholic doctrine. It is still used by all serious students of the Faith.*
- 4) Why was Thomas unable to finish writing the *Summa*?
  - a. *He was given a glimpse of Heaven and knew that nothing he had ever written or ever could write would compare with the beauty of Heaven.*
- 5) Write a summary about Thomas' death.
  - a. *St. Thomas had been given a vision of Heaven and wanted to die so he could go to Jesus. He knew he was going to die and told Father Reginald and his sister, Theodora he would die soon. He was on his way to Lyons, France to attend a meeting of priests as the Pope had requested, when he became ill and died a holy and peaceful death in an abbey on his way there. Immediately after his death many miracles took place through his intercession.*

## CHAPTER 7

- 1) What happened after the death of St. Thomas?
  - a. *Many miracles occurred when people prayed to him.*
- 2) What is St. Thomas the patron saint of?
  - a. *St. Thomas is patron of Catholic schools.*
- 3) Why should this be important to you?
  - a. *Your home school is a Catholic school in your house.*

# Saint Vincent de Paul

## CHAPTER 1

**VOCABULARY:** monotonous, undulations, heath, annals, benefice, conscientious, rubrics, rectorship, brigantines, unscathed

- 1) How did Vincent de Paul pay for his education?
  - a. *He tutored the sons of wealthy people.*
- 2) Where did Father Vincent de Paul celebrate his first Mass?
  - a. *He celebrated his first Mass in a little chapel in the woods.*
- 3) Why did he turn down the rectorship of the parish of Thil?
  - a. *Another priest said he had been promised the position, and Vincent did not want to go to court over it.*
- 4) What happened to Vincent on his way to Toulouse?
  - a. *The ship he was on was captured by pirates and he was wounded by an arrow and taken prisoner.*

## CHAPTER 2

**VOCABULARY:** alchemist, harangue, oblige, apostatized, abashed, sultan, legate, fervent, incessant, grievous

- 1) How did Vincent escape from Tunis and get back to France?
  - a. *The farmer who owned him came back to the Faith and escaped by boat with him.*
- 2) How did Vincent behave when he was falsely accused of stealing the judge's money?
  - a. *He just said he had not stolen the money and did not try to justify himself.*
- 3) What important holy priest did Vincent meet during this time in Paris?
  - a. *He met Father de Berulle who would later become a Cardinal.*
- 4) What did Vincent do when he could not help a doctor get over his doubts against the Faith, and what was the result of it?
  - a. *He prayed to God to take the temptation from the doctor and give it to himself. Because of that the doctor was cured and Vincent spent several years suffering from doubts against his faith.*
- 5) How did he get rid of his big problem?
  - a. *He consecrated himself to Jesus in the person of His poor.*

## CHAPTER 3

**VOCABULARY:** curé, presbytery, consternation, edifying, obstinacy, contemporaries, renounce, profaning, prestige, pathetically

- 1) Why did Vincent like being in the country parish of Clichy?
  - a. *He was working among the poor, was able to teach young men preparing for the priesthood, and bring many back to the Faith.*
- 2) What were Vincent's great successes when he was with the de Gondis family?
  - a. *He helped many people become stronger in their faith: brought many back to the Church, and began doing parish missions teaching about the necessity of General Confession.*
- 3) What did he consider his great failure when with the de Gondis?
  - a. *He was not able to tame the de Gondis boys, the "little demons".*

- 4) Why didn't Vincent let the de Gondis know he was not coming back from Paris?
  - a. *He knew they would be very upset by him leaving them for good.*

#### CHAPTER 4

**VOCABULARY:** squalor, eloquence, carousals, confraternity, disdain, advocate, vermin, aghast, ardent, inaugurated

- 1) How did Count de Rougemont change after meeting Vincent?
  - a. *He converted, sold property with the money to be used for the poor, and opened his home to the sick taking care of them himself.*
- 2) How did Vincent influence the women of his parish?
  - a. *They began to take care of the poor and sick people.*
- 3) How did the de Gondis get Vincent to come back to Paris and their home?
  - a. *They told him that he could do much more good in Paris than in his parish and they would help by their money and influence.*
- 4) Why did King Louis XII make Vincent Almoner to the King's ships?
  - a. *When Vincent saw how badly the prisoners who rowed the King's ships were treated, he took care of them and made their conditions better.*

#### CHAPTER 5

**VOCABULARY:** exhorting, stipulated, pompous, eloquence, rhetoric, frivolous, laxity, prevalent, precept, apparent

- 1) What did Madame de Gondi expect Vincent to do with the money she donated?
  - a. *She wanted him to get priests to evangelize the peasants on her estates.*
- 2) What did M. de Gondi do after the death of his wife?
  - a. *He became a member of Vincent's Oratory.*
- 3) What were the French priests like at this time in history?
  - a. *The wealthy ones were living frivolous lives and the poor ones were as ignorant of the Faith as the peasants.*
- 4) What did Vincent do to help priests better themselves?
  - a. *He began giving retreats to seminarians and priests and had weekly Conferences to help guide new priests.*
- 5) What name was given to Vincent's congregation?
  - a. *They were called the Lazarists.*
- 6) How did Vincent handle his successes?
  - a. *In humility he gave all credit for his successes to God.*

#### CHAPTER 6

**VOCABULARY:** perseverance, stint, philanthropy, unclastered, righteousness, mountebanks, adherence, conform, austerity, instituted

- 1) Why did Vincent have to call on Louise le Gras to help with the Ladies of Charity?
  - a. *The Ladies of Charity were wives and mothers who could not devote all of their time caring for the poor and needy.*
- 2) Who did Louise de Gras get to help her?
  - a. *Poor country girls joined her in her work.*
- 3) How did Vincent help Louise le Gras and her girls in their work?
  - a. *He gave weekly conferences where he instructed them in the ideals of their vocation, teaching them to be humble and simple.*
- 4) What work did the Sisters of Charity do?

- a. *They took care of the poor, sick, soldiers, convicts, the elderly, and orphans.*

## CHAPTER 7

**VOCABULARY:** pestilence, laudanum, direst, depraved, avidity, narratives, prevalent, procure, unwonted, urbanity

- 1) What did Vincent find when he took a newborn baby to the foundling home?
  - a. *He found a filthy house in which the children were hungry, neglected, and living in terrible conditions.*
- 2) What did he do about #1?
  - a. *He got a house and ransomed twelve of the children for the Sisters of Charity to take care of.*
- 3) Besides saving the children's lives and giving them good care, what else did Vincent and the Sisters do that they thought was even more important?
  - a. *They had them baptized.*
- 4) When the Sisters were running out of money and thought of closing the Founding Hospital, what two things did Vincent do?
  - a. *He talked them into continuing and made leaflets that he sold to help support them.*

## CHAPTER 8

**VOCABULARY:** regent, preferment, consternation, obdurate, scrupulous, adherents, disconcerting, impertinent, vehement, indolent

- 1) Who was made ruler of France when King Louis XIII died?
  - a. *Queen Anne of Austria, his wife, was made ruler until their son came of age.*
- 2) What kind of a man was the Minister of State, Cardinal Mazarin?
  - a. *He was unscrupulous and used his position to appoint unworthy priests to bishoprics and positions of power in the Church.*
- 3) How was Vincent successful when he was on the Council of Conscience?
  - a. *He was able to see that good priests were put in the important positions.*
- 4) What did Vincent predict would happen when the Council of Conscience quit meeting and Mazarin was in charge of making the appointments?
  - a. *He predicted that there would be a curse on France because the wrong men were made bishops.*

## CHAPTER 9

**VOCABULARY:** austerity, adherents, austere, mortified, maxim, repugnant, indignation, intervals, assailed, specious

- 1) What heresy was becoming strong in France?
  - a. *The heresy of Jansenism was becoming strong in France.*
- 2) Who was called the apostle of the heresy?
  - a. *Abbe de St. Cyran was the apostle of Jansenism.*
- 3) How did St. Vincent de Paul fight against the heresy?
  - a. *St. Vincent de Paul fought the heresy with charity while constantly pointing out the errors.*
- 4) What was the result of the Lazarist's missions in Africa?
  - a. *The missions in Africa were completely unsuccessful, and twenty-seven Mission Priests were martyred.*

## CHAPTER 10

**VOCABULARY:** impoverished, diminished, regency, forlorn, ludicrous, pillaged, abnegation, despondency, privations, mortification

- 1) Why did the people of Paris rebel?
  - a. *Cardinal Mazarin was wasting government money while the people were starving.*
- 2) Why did Vincent de Paul go to see the Queen in St. Germain?
  - a. *He wanted her to understand that Mazarin was responsible for all of the trouble in Paris.*
- 3) To whom did the Queen send Vincent and what was the result?
  - a. *She sent him to Mazarin who paid no attention to Vincent's plea for him to sacrifice himself for the country.*
- 4) Why did the people turn against St. Vincent?
  - a. *They thought he had betrayed them to the Queen.*
- 5) How did Vincent use the carriage that was provided for him?
  - a. *Anyone who wanted could use it, and he used it to help the sick and the poor.*

## CHAPTER 11

**VOCABULARY:** saltpeter, vagabonds, infirmity, ulcers, malady, fetters, disclaimed, accursed, lucid, oratory

- 1) What work did St. Vincent de Paul begin with the help of the Sisters of Charity when peace was restored in Paris?
  - a. *He founded a house of refuge for old men and women who couldn't work for a living.*
- 2) What was one of the greatest sufferings of St. Vincent in his last years?
  - a. *One of his greatest sufferings was that Cardinal Mazarin was still in charge of appointing priests to the bishoprics.*
- 3) What was the last word St. Vincent said before he died, and what does it mean?
  - a. *He said "Confido" and it means "I trust."*